Nikon

En

The Nikon Guide to Digital Photography with the

D2Xs

DIGITAL CAMERA

Nikon
D2Xs
MODE
C
S
M

CE

Product Documentation

The documentation for this product includes the manuals listed below. Please be sure to read all instructions thoroughly to get the most from your camera.

Quick Start Guide
The *Quick Start Guide* takes you through the process of unpacking and setting up your Nikon digital camera, taking your first photographs, and transferring them to your computer.

Guide to Digital Photography
The *Guide to Digital Photography* (this manual) provides complete operating instructions for your camera.

PictureProject reference CD
The PictureProject reference CD contains information on installing and using PictureProject. See the *Quick Start Guide* for viewing instructions.

CAUTION: Foreign Matter on the Low-Pass Filter

Nikon takes every possible precaution to prevent foreign matter from coming into contact with the low-pass filter during production and shipping. The D2Xs, however, is designed to be used with interchangeable lenses, and foreign matter may enter the camera when lenses are removed or exchanged. Once inside the camera, this foreign matter may adhere to the low-pass filter, where it may appear in photographs taken under certain conditions. To prevent foreign matter from entering the camera, do not exchange lenses in dusty environments. To protect the camera when no lens is in place, be sure to replace the body cap provided with the camera, being careful to first remove all dust and other foreign matter that may be adhering to the body cap.

Should foreign matter find its way onto the low-pass filter, clean the low-pass filter as instructed on pages 256–257 of this manual, or have the low-pass filter cleaned by authorized Nikon service personnel. Photographs affected by the presence of foreign matter on the low-pass filter can be retouched using Capture NX (available separately) or the clean image options available in some third-party imaging software.

How to Read This Manual

First, be aware of the warnings, cautions, and notices on pages ii–vii.

Then read "Overview" and "Getting to Know the Camera" to acquaint yourself with the conventions used in this manual and the names of camera parts, then set up the camera as described in "First Steps."	**Overview**
	Getting to Know the Camera
	First Steps
Now you are ready to take photographs and play them back.	**Basic Photography**
	Basic Playback
Once you have mastered the basics of digital photography, you can read these sections for complete information on when and how to use camera controls.	**High-Speed Crop**
	Choosing a Shooting Mode
	Image Quality and Size
	ISO Sensitivity
	White Balance
	Image Adjustment
	Focus
	Exposure
	Flash Photography
	Overlay/Multiple Exposure
	Trimming Photographs
	Interval Timer Photography
	Self-Timer Mode
	Non-CPU Lenses
	Using a GPS Unit
	Two-Button Reset
Refer to these chapters for more on playback…	**More About Playback**
…on recording and playing voice memos…	**Voice Memos**
…on camera menus and custom settings…	**Menu Guide**
…on connecting to a computer, printer, or TV…	**Connections**
…and on accessories and troubleshooting.	**Technical Notes**

For Your Safety

To prevent damage to your Nikon product or injury to yourself or to others, read the following safety precautions in their entirety before using this equipment. Keep these safety instructions where all those who use the product will read them.

The consequences that could result from failure to observe the precautions listed in this section are indicated by the following symbol:

⚠ This icon marks warnings, information that should be read before using this Nikon product to prevent possible injury.

WARNINGS

⚠ **Do not look at the sun through the viewfinder**
Viewing the sun or other strong light source through the viewfinder could cause permanent visual impairment.

⚠ **Turn off immediately in the event of malfunction**
Should you notice smoke or an unusual smell coming from the equipment, quick charger, or AC adapter (available separately), unplug the AC adapter and remove the battery immediately, taking care to avoid burns. Continued operation could result in injury. After removing the battery, take the equipment to a Nikon-authorized service center for inspection.

⚠ **Do not use in the presence of flammable gas**
Do not use electronic equipment in the presence of flammable gas, as this could result in explosion or fire.

⚠ **Do not place strap around the neck of an infant or child**
Placing the camera strap around the neck of an infant or child could result in strangulation.

⚠ **Do not disassemble**
Touching the internal parts of the camera or quick charger could result in injury. In the event of a malfunction, the product should be repaired only by a qualified technician. Should the product break open as the result of a fall or other accident, remove the battery and/or AC adapter and then take the product to a Nikon-authorized service center for inspection.

⚠ **Observe proper precautions when handling batteries**
Batteries may leak or explode if improperly handled. Observe the following precautions when handling batteries for use in this product:

- Be sure the product is off before replacing batteries. If you are using an AC adapter, be sure it is unplugged.
- Use only batteries approved for use in this equipment.
- Use only CR1616 lithium batteries to replace the clock battery. Using another type of battery could cause an explosion. Dispose of used batteries as directed.
- Do not attempt to insert batteries upside down or backwards.
- Do not short or disassemble batteries.
- Do not expose batteries to flame or to excessive heat.

- Do not immerse in or expose to water.
- Batteries are prone to leakage when fully discharged. To avoid damage to the product, be sure to remove batteries when no charge remains.
- Discontinue use immediately should you notice any changes in the batteries, such as discoloration or deformation.
- Replace the terminal cover when transporting EN-EL4a rechargeable Li-ion batteries. Do not transport or store with metal objects such as necklaces or hairpins.
- When EN-EL4a batteries are not in use, attach the terminal cover and store in a cool place.
- Immediately after use, or when the product is used on battery power for an extended period, the EN-EL4a battery may become hot. Before removing the battery, turn the camera off and allow the battery to cool.

⚠ **Observe proper precautions when handling the quick charger**

- Keep dry. Failure to observe this precaution could result in fire or electric shock.
- Dust on or near the metal parts of the plug should be removed with a dry cloth. Continued use could result in fire.
- Do not handle the power cable or go near the charger during thunderstorms. Failure to observe this precaution could result in electric shock.
- Do not damage, modify, forcibly tug or bend the power cable, place it under heavy objects, or expose it to heat or flame. Should the insulation be damaged and the wires become exposed, take it to a Nikon-authorized service representative for inspection. Failure to observe these precautions could result in fire or electric shock.
- Do not handle the plug or charger with wet hands. Failure to observe this precaution could result in electric shock.

⚠ **Use appropriate cables**

When connecting cables to the input and output jacks, use only the cables provided or sold by Nikon for the purpose, to maintain compliance with product regulations.

⚠ **Keep out of reach of children**

Particular care should be taken to prevent infants from putting the battery or other small parts into their mouths.

⚠ **Removing memory cards**

Memory cards may become hot during use. Observe due caution when removing memory cards from the camera.

⚠ **CD-ROMs**

The CD-ROMs on which the software and manuals are distributed should not be played back on audio CD equipment. Playing CD-ROMs on an audio CD player could cause hearing loss or damage the equipment.

⚠ **Observe caution when using a flash**

Using a flash close to your subject's eyes could cause temporary visual impairment. Particular care should be observed if photographing infants, when the flash should be no less than one meter (39˝) from the subject.

⚠ **When using the viewfinder**

When operating the diopter adjustment control with your eye to the viewfinder, care should be taken not to put your finger in your eye accidentally.

⚠ **Avoid contact with liquid crystal**

Should the monitor break, care should be taken to avoid injury due to broken glass and to prevent liquid crystal from the monitor touching the skin or entering the eyes or mouth.

Caring for the Camera and Battery

Do not drop
The product may malfunction if subjected to strong shocks or vibration.

Keep dry
This product is not waterproof, and may malfunction if immersed in water or exposed to high levels of humidity. Rusting of the internal mechanism can cause irreparable damage.

Avoid sudden changes in temperature
Sudden changes in temperature, such as occur when entering or leaving a heated building on a cold day, can cause condensation inside the device. To prevent condensation, place the device in a carrying case or a plastic bag before exposing it to sudden changes in temperature.

Keep away from strong magnetic fields
Do not use or store this device in the vicinity of equipment that generates strong electromagnetic radiation or magnetic fields. Strong static charges or the magnetic fields produced by equipment such as radio transmitters could interfere with the monitor, damage data stored on the memory card, or affect the product's internal circuitry.

Do not point the lens at strong light sources for extended periods
Avoid pointing the lens at the sun or other strong light sources for extended periods when using or storing the camera. Intense light may cause deterioration in the image sensor, producing a white blur effect in photographs.

Do not touch the shutter curtain
The shutter curtain is extremely thin and easily damaged. Under no circumstances should you exert pressure on the curtain, poke it with cleaning tools, or subject it to powerful air currents from a blower. These actions could scratch, deform, or tear the curtain.

Handle all moving parts with care
Do not apply force to the battery-chamber, card-slot, or connector covers. These parts are especially susceptible to damage.

Cleaning
- When cleaning the camera body, use a blower to remove dust and lint, then wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. After using your camera at the beach or seaside, wipe off any sand or salt using a cloth lightly dampened with pure water and then dry your camera thoroughly. In rare instances, static electricity produced by a brush or cloth may cause the LCD displays to light up or darken. This does not indicate a malfunction, and the display will shortly return to normal.
- When cleaning the lens and mirror, remember that these elements are easily damaged. Dust and lint should be gently removed with a blower. When using an aerosol blower, keep the can vertical (tilting the can could result in liquid being sprayed on the mirror). If you do get a fingerprint or other stain on the lens, apply a small amount of lens cleaner to a soft cloth and wipe the lens carefully.
- See "Technical Notes: Caring for Your Camera" for information on cleaning the low-pass filter (👁 256).

Storage
- To prevent mold or mildew, store the camera in a dry, well-ventilated area. If you will not be using the product for long periods, remove the battery to prevent leakage and store the camera in a plastic bag containing a desiccant. Do not, however, store the camera case in a plastic bag, as this may cause the material to deteriorate. Note that desiccant gradually loses its capacity to absorb moisture and should be replaced at regular intervals.

- Do not store the camera with naphtha or camphor moth balls, close to equipment that produces strong magnetic fields, or in areas subject to extremes of temperature, for example near a space heater or in a closed vehicle on a hot day.
- To prevent mold or mildew, take the camera out of storage at least once a month. Turn the camera on and release the shutter a few times before putting the camera away again.
- Store the battery in a cool, dry place. Replace the terminal cover before putting the battery away.

Notes on the monitor

- The monitor may contain a few pixels that are always lit or that do not light. This is a characteristic common to all TFT LCD monitors and does not indicate a malfunction. Images recorded with the product will not be affected.
- Images in the monitor may be difficult to see in a bright light.
- Do not apply pressure to the monitor; this could cause damage or malfunction. Dust or lint on the monitor can be removed with a blower. Stains can be removed by rubbing the surface lightly with a soft cloth or chamois leather.
- Should the monitor break, care should be taken to avoid injury due to broken glass and to prevent the liquid crystal from the monitor touching the skin or entering the eyes or mouth.
- Replace the monitor cover when transporting the camera or leaving it unattended.

Turn the product off before removing or disconnecting the power source

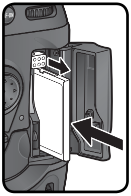
Do not unplug the product or remove the battery while the product is on, or while images are being recorded or deleted. Forcibly cutting power to the product in these circumstances could result in loss of data or in damage to product memory or internal circuitry. To prevent an accidental interruption of power, avoid carrying the product from one location to another while the AC adapter is connected.

Batteries

- When you turn the device on, check the battery-level displayed in the control panel to determine whether the battery needs to be replaced. The battery needs to be replaced when the battery-level indicator is flashing.
- Ready a spare battery and keep it fully charged when taking photographs on important occasions. Depending on your location, you may find it difficult to purchase replacement batteries on short notice.
- On cold days, the capacity of batteries tends to decrease. Be sure the battery is fully charged before taking photographs outside in cold weather. Keep a spare battery in a warm place and exchange the two as necessary. Once warmed, a cold battery may recover some of its charge.
- Should the battery terminals become dirty, wipe them off with a clean, dry cloth before use.
- After removing the battery from the camera, be sure to replace the terminal cover.

Memory cards

- Turn the power off before inserting or removing memory cards. Inserting or removing cards with the power on could render them unusable.
- Insert memory cards as shown in the illustration at right. Inserting cards upside down or backwards could damage the camera or the card.



Notices

- No part of the manuals included with this product may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language in any form, by any means, without Nikon's prior written permission.
- Nikon reserves the right to change the specifications of the hardware and software described in these manuals at any time and without prior notice.
- Nikon will not be held liable for any damages resulting from the use of this product.
- While every effort has been made to ensure that the information in these manuals is accurate and complete, we would appreciate it were you to bring any errors or omissions to the attention of the Nikon representative in your area (address provided separately).

Notice for customers in the U.S.A.

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Radio Frequency Interference Statement

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/ television technician for help.

Nikon D2Xs
Tested To Comply
With FCC Standards
FOR HOME OR OFFICE USE

CAUTIONS

Modifications

The FCC requires the user to be notified that any changes or modifications made to this device that are not expressly approved by Nikon Corporation may void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Interface Cables

Use the interface cables sold or provided by Nikon for your equipment. Using other interface cables may exceed the limits of Class B Part 15 of the FCC rules.

Notice for customers in the State of California

WARNING: Handling the cord on this product will expose you to lead, a chemical known to the State of California to cause birth defects or other reproductive harm. ***Wash hands after handling.***

Nikon Inc.,
1300 Walt Whitman Road, Melville, New York
11747-3064, U.S.A. Tel.: 631-547-4200

Notice for customers in Canada

CAUTION

This class B digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference Causing Equipment Regulations.

ATTENTION

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B respecte toutes les exigences du Règlement sur le matériel brouilleur du Canada.

Notice Concerning Prohibition of Copying or Reproduction

Note that simply being in possession of material that has been digitally copied or reproduced by means of a scanner, digital camera or other device may be punishable by law.

- Items prohibited by law from being copied or reproduced

  Do not copy or reproduce paper money, coins, securities, government bonds, or local government bonds, even if such copies or reproductions are stamped "Sample."

  The copying or reproduction of paper money, coins, or securities which are circulated in a foreign country is prohibited.

  Unless the prior permission of the government has been obtained, the copying or reproduction of unused postage stamps or post cards issued by the government is prohibited.

  The copying or reproduction of stamps issued by the government and of certified documents stipulated by law is prohibited.

- Cautions on certain copies and reproductions

  The government has issued cautions on copies or reproductions of securities issued by private companies (shares, bills, checks, gift certificates, etc.), commuter passes, or coupon tickets, except when a minimum of necessary copies are to be provided for business use by a company. Also, do not copy or reproduce passports issued by the government, licenses issued by public agencies and private groups, ID cards, and tickets, such as passes and meal coupons.

- Comply with copyright notices

  The copying or reproduction of copyrighted creative works such as books, music, paintings, woodcut prints, maps, drawings, movies, and photographs is governed by national and international copyright laws. Do not use this product for the purpose of making illegal copies or to infringe copyright laws.

Disposing of Data Storage Devices

Please note that deleting images or formatting memory cards or other data storage devices does not completely erase the original image data. Deleted files can sometimes be recovered from discarded storage devices using commercially available software, potentially resulting in the malicious use of personal image data. Ensuring the privacy of such data is the user's responsibility.

Before discarding a data storage device or transferring ownership to another person, erase all data using commercial deletion software, or format the device and then completely refill it with images containing no private information (for example, pictures of empty sky). Be sure to also replace any pictures selected for preset white balance (👁 60). Care should be taken to avoid injury or damage to property when physically destroying data storage devices.

Table of Contents

For Your Safety ii
Caring for the Camera and Battery iv
Notices vi

Introduction **1**
Overview 2
Getting to Know the Camera 3
First Steps 15
  Step 1—Attach the Camera Strap 15
  Step 2—Insert the Battery 16
  Step 3—Basic Setup 17
  Step 4—Attach a Lens 20
  Step 5—Insert a Memory Card 22

Tutorial **25**
Basic Photography 26
  Step 1—Ready the Camera 27
  Step 2—Adjust Camera Settings 29
  Step 3—Frame a Photograph 31
  Step 4—Focus 32
  Step 5—Check Exposure 33
  Step 6—Take the Photograph 34
Basic Playback 35

Taking Photographs **37**
Using Camera Menus 39
High-Speed Crop 41
Choosing a Shooting Mode 43
Image Quality and Size 45
  Image Quality 45
  Image Size 48
ISO Sensitivity 52
White Balance 55
  Fine-Tuning White Balance 57
  Choosing a Color Temperature 59
  Preset White Balance 60
Image Adjustment 68
  Making Edges More Distinct: *Image Sharpening* *68*
  Adjusting Contrast: *Tone Compensation* *69*
  Suiting Colors to a Workflow: *Color Space* *70*
  Matching Colors to the Subject: *Color Mode* *72*
  Controlling Color: *Hue Adjustment* *73*

Focus 74
Focus Mode 74
Focus Area Selection 76
Autofocus 78
AF-Area Mode 78
Focus Lock 82
Getting Good Results with Autofocus 84
Manual Focus 85
Exposure 86
Metering 86
Exposure Mode 87
Autoexposure Lock 97
Exposure Compensation 99
Bracketing 100
Flash Photography 108
Compatible Flash Units 108
Flash Sync Modes 112
FV Lock 114
Flash Contacts and Indicators 116
Overlay/Multiple Exposure 118
Trimming Photographs 123
Interval Timer Photography 125
Self-Timer Mode 130
Non-CPU Lenses 131
Using a GPS Unit 135
Two-Button Reset 136
More About Playback 137
Single-Image Playback 138
Photo Information 139
Viewing Multiple Images: Thumbnail Playback 142
Taking a Closer Look: Playback Zoom 144
Protecting Photographs from Deletion 145
Deleting Individual Photographs 146
Voice Memos 147
Recording Voice Memos 148
Playing Voice Memos 152

Menu Guide 155
The Playback Menu 156
Delete 156
Playback Folder 158
Slide Show 159
Hide Image 161
Print Set 163
Display Mode 166
Image Review 166
After Delete 167
Rotate Tall 167
The Shooting Menu 168
Shooting Menu Bank 169
Reset Shooting Menu 171
Active Folder 172
File Naming 173
Image Quality 174
Image Size 174
Hi-Speed Crop 174
JPEG Compression 174
RAW Compression 175
White Balance 175
Long Exp. NR 175
High ISO NR 176
ISO Sensitivity 176
Image Sharpening 176
Tone Compensation 176
Color Space 177
Color Mode 177
Hue Adjustment 177
Image Overlay 177
Multiple Exposure 177
Trim 178
Interval Timer Shooting 178
Non-CPU Lens Data 178
Custom Settings 179
The Setup Menu 213
Format 214
LCD Brightness 215
Mirror Lock-up 215
Video Mode 216

World Time 216
Language 216
Image Comment 217
Auto Image Rotation 218
Recent Settings 219
Voice Memo 219
Voice Memo Overwrite 219
Voice Memo Button 220
Audio Output 220
USB 220
Dust Off Ref Photo 221
Battery Info 223
Wireless LAN 223
Image Authentication 231
Save/Load Settings 232
Firmware Version 232

Connections **233**

Television Playback 234
Connecting to a Computer 235
Connecting to a Printer 238

Technical Notes **243**

Optional Accessories 244
Lenses for the D2Xs 244
Other Accessories for the D2Xs 247
Caring for the Camera 253
Troubleshooting 258
Specifications 261
Quick Charger/Rechargeable Battery 265
Index 271

Trademark Information

Macintosh, Mac OS, and QuickTime are trademarks or registered trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc. Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. Pentium is a trademark of Intel Corporation. CompactFlash is a trademark of SanDisk Corporation. Microdrive is a registered trademark of Hitachi Global Storage Technologies in the United States and/or other countries. Lexar Media is a trademark of Lexar Media Corporation. PictBridge is a trademark. All other trade names mentioned in this manual or the other documentation provided with your Nikon product are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

Introduction

Getting Started

Overview 2
Getting to Know the Camera 3–14
First Steps 15–24

This chapter is divided into the following sections:

Overview
Read this section for a description of how this manual is organized and for an explanation of the symbols and conventions used.

Getting to Know the Camera
Bookmark this section and refer to it for information on the names and functions of camera parts.

First Steps
This section details the steps required to ready the camera for use: inserting the battery and memory card, attaching a lens and camera strap, and setting the date, time, and language.

Overview

About This Manual

Thank you for your purchase of a Nikon D2Xs single-lens reflex (SLR) digital camera with interchangeable lenses. This manual has been written to help you enjoy taking pictures with your Nikon digital camera. Read this manual thoroughly before use, and keep it handy when using the product.

To make it easier to find the information you need, the following symbols and conventions are used:

✓	This icon marks cautions, information that should be read before use to prevent damage to the camera.	💡	This icon marks tips, additional information that may be helpful when using the camera.
✎	This icon marks notes, information that should be read before using the camera.	👁	This icon indicates that more information is available elsewhere in this manual or in the *Quick Start Guide*.
☰	This icon marks settings that can be adjusted using camera menus.	CSM	This icon marks settings that can be fine-tuned from the Custom Settings menu.

Take Test Shots

Before taking pictures on important occasions (for example, at weddings or before taking the camera with you on a trip), take a test shot to ensure that the camera is functioning normally. Nikon will not be held liable for damages or lost profits that may result from product malfunction.

Life-Long Learning

As part of Nikon's "Life-Long Learning" commitment to ongoing product support and education, continually-updated information is available on-line at the following sites:

- For users in the U.S.A.: *http://www.nikonusa.com/*
- For users in Europe and Africa: *http://www.europe-nikon.com/support*
- For users in Asia, Oceania, and the Middle East: *http://www.nikon-asia.com/*

Visit these sites to keep up-to-date with the latest product information, tips, answers to frequently-asked questions (FAQs), and general advice on digital imaging and photography. Additional information may be available from the Nikon representative in your area. See the URL below for contact information:

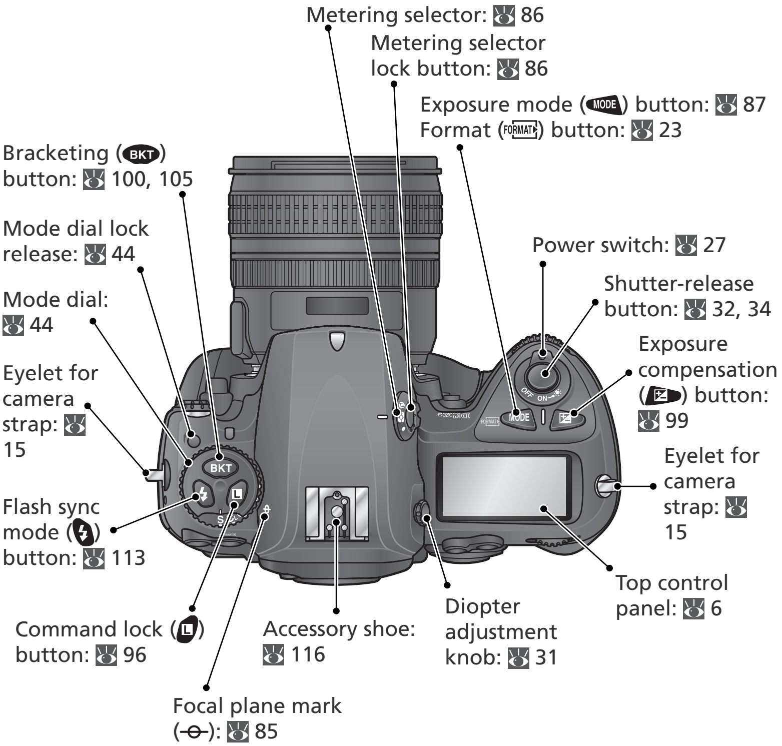
http://nikonimaging.com/

Getting to Know the Camera

Camera Controls and Displays

Take a few moments to familiarize yourself with camera controls and displays. You may find it helpful to bookmark this section and refer to it as you read through the rest of the manual.

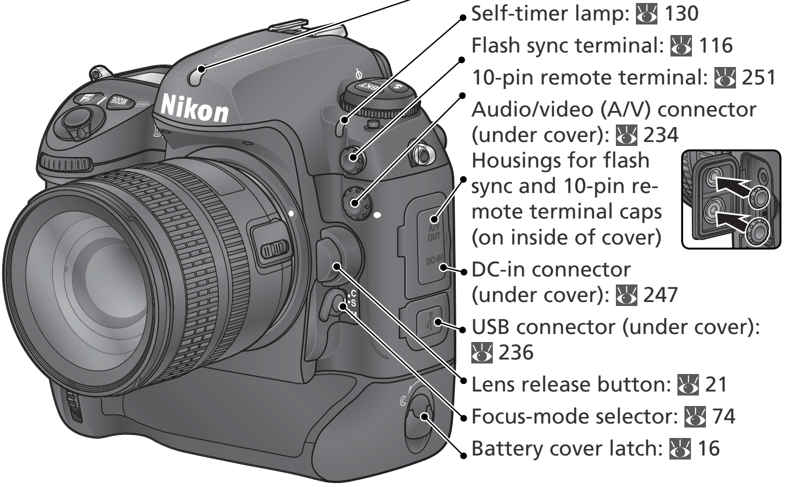
Camera Body


Metering selector: ☞ 86
Metering selector lock button: ☞ 86
Exposure mode (MODE) button: ☞ 87
Format (FORMAT) button: ☞ 23
Bracketing (BKT) button: ☞ 100, 105
Mode dial lock release: ☞ 44
Mode dial: ☞ 44
Eyelet for camera strap: ☞ 15
Power switch: ☞ 27
Shutter-release button: ☞ 32, 34
Exposure compensation (±) button: ☞ 99
Eyelet for camera strap: ☞ 15
Flash sync mode (⚡) button: ☞ 113
Top control panel: ☞ 6
Diopter adjustment knob: ☞ 31
Command lock (L) button: ☞ 96
Accessory shoe: ☞ 116
Focal plane mark (⊖): ☞ 85
BKT
L
S
OFF ON
MODE
FORMAT

LCD Illuminators

Holding the power switch in the ☀ position activates the exposure meters and control panel backlights (LCD illuminators), allowing the display to be read in the dark. After the power switch is released, the illuminator will remain lit while the camera exposure meters are active or until the shutter is released.

Camera Body (continued)



Ambient light sensor: 👁 55, 60

Self-timer lamp: 👁 130

Flash sync terminal: 👁 116

10-pin remote terminal: 👁 251

Audio/video (A/V) connector (under cover): 👁 234

Housings for flash sync and 10-pin remote terminal caps (on inside of cover)

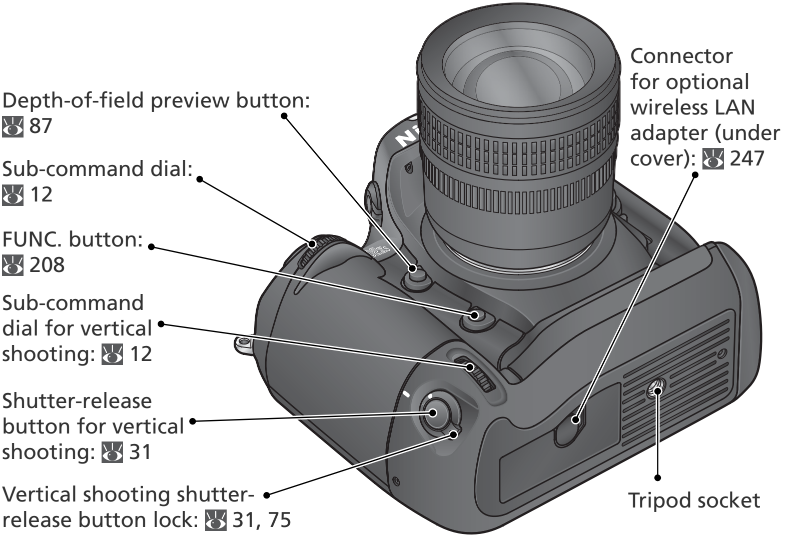
DC-in connector (under cover): 👁 247

USB connector (under cover): 👁 236

Lens release button: 👁 21

Focus-mode selector: 👁 74

Battery cover latch: 👁 16



Depth-of-field preview button: 👁 87

Sub-command dial: 👁 12

FUNC. button: 👁 208

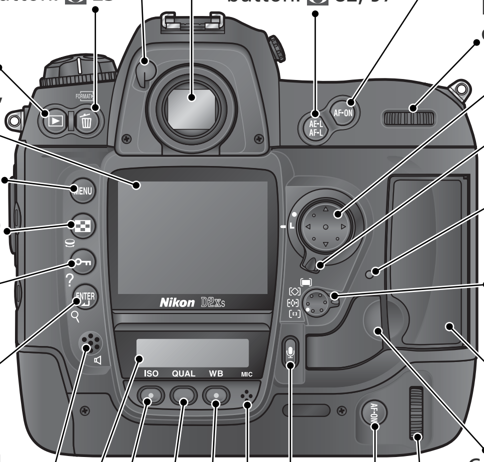
Sub-command dial for vertical shooting: 👁 12

Shutter-release button for vertical shooting: 👁 31

Vertical shooting shutter-release button lock: 👁 31, 75

Connector for optional wireless LAN adapter (under cover): 👁 247

Tripod socket



Eyepiece shutter lever: 👁 31, 130

Delete (🗑) button: 👁 35, 146

Format (FORMAT) button: 👁 23

Playback (▶) button: 👁 138

Monitor: 👁 28, 215, 253

Menu (MENU) button: 👁 39

Thumbnail (⊞) button: 👁 142

Protect (🔑) button: 👁 145

HELP button: 👁 39

Enter (ENTER) button: 👁 40

Playback zoom (🔍) button: 👁 144

Speaker: 👁 153

Rear control panel: 👁 9

ISO sensitivity (**ISO**) button: 👁 52

Image quality/size (**QUAL**) button: 👁 46, 49

White balance (**WB**) button: 👁 55–67

Microphone: 👁 148

Viewfinder eyepiece: 👁 31, 248

AE/AF lock (AE-L AF-L) button: 👁 82, 97

AF-ON (AF-ON)button: 👁 75

Main command dial: 👁 12

Multi selector: 👁 14

Focus selector lock: 👁 76

Memory card access lamp: 👁 22, 24

AF-area mode selector: 👁 78

Memory card slot cover: 👁 22

Card-slot cover release button (under cover): 👁 22

Main command dial for vertical shooting: 👁 12

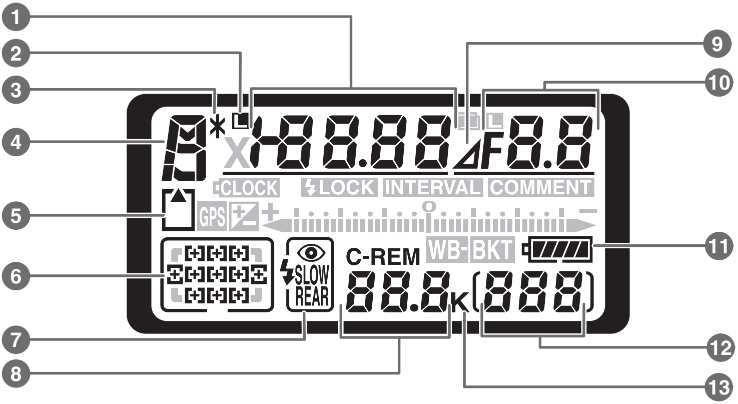
AF-ON (AF-ON) button for vertical shooting: 👁 75

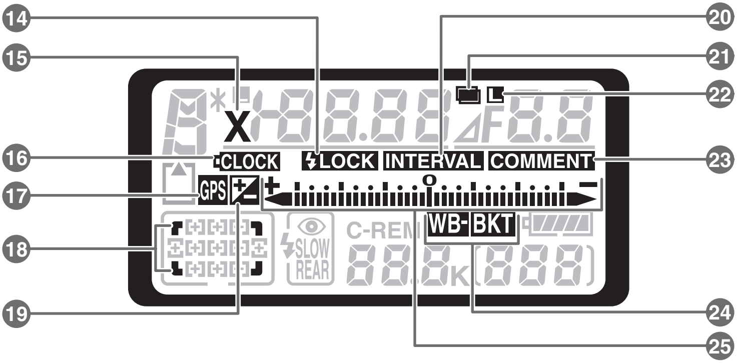
Microphone (🎙) button: 👁 148

✓ The Speaker and Microphone

Do not bring magnetic devices, such as microdrive cards, close to the built-in speaker or microphone.

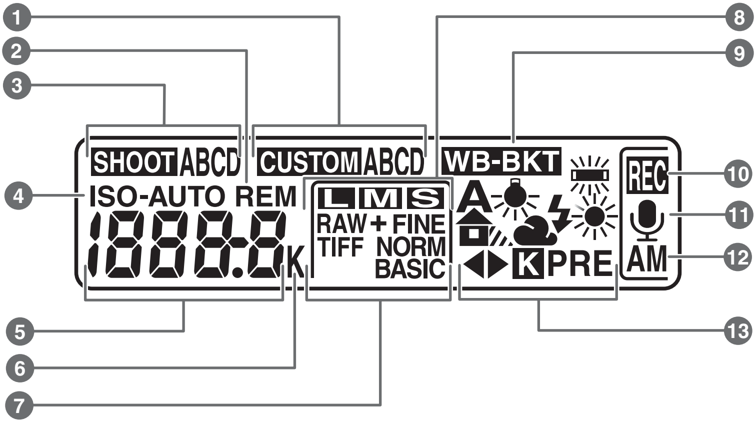
The Top Control Panel


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
CLOCK
LOCK
INTERVAL
COMMENT
GPS
C-REM
WB-BKT
SLOW
REAR
K


14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
X
CLOCK
LOCK
INTERVAL
COMMENT
GPS
WB-BKT

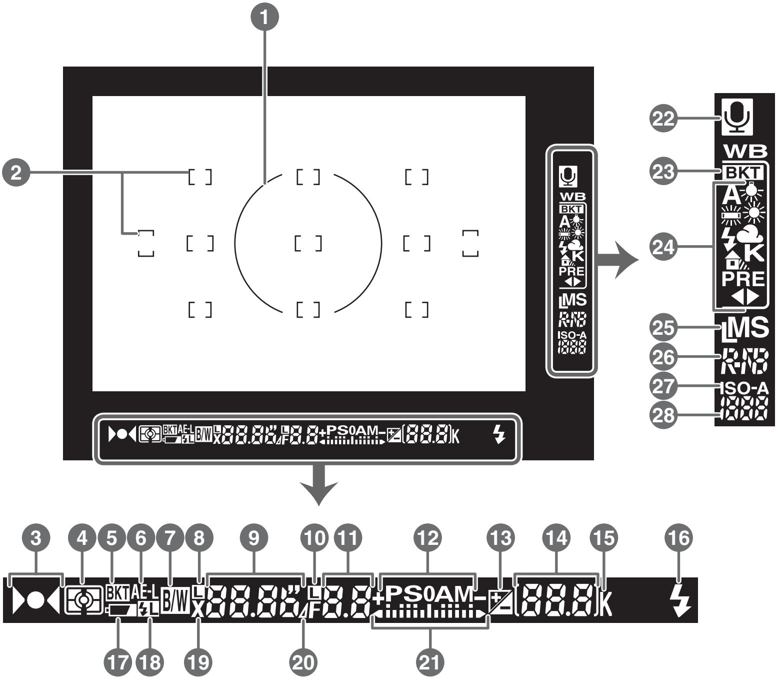
1	Shutter speed	87–96
	Exposure compensation value	99
	Number of shots in bracketing sequence	100
	Number of intervals for interval timer photography	127
	Focal length (non-CPU lens)	131
	ISO sensitivity	52
	"Busy" indicator	42
2	Shutter-speed lock icon	96
3	Flexible program indicator	89
4	Exposure mode	87
5	Memory card indicator	23, 28
6	Focus area	76
	AF-area mode	78–81
7	Flash sync mode	112
8	Number of exposures remaining	28
	Number of shots remaining before memory buffer fills	44
	Capture mode indicator	236
9	Aperture stop indicator	93, 95
10	Aperture (f/-number)	87–96
	Aperture (number of stops)	93, 95
	Bracketing increment	101, 105
	Number of shots per interval	125
	Maximum aperture (non-CPU lens)	133
	PC mode indicator	236
11	Battery indicator	27
12	Frame count	28
13	"K" (appears when memory remains for over 1000 exposures)	51
14	FV lock indicator	114
15	Sync indicator	113
16	Clock battery indicator	19, 255
17	GPS connection indicator	135
18	High-speed crop indicator	41
19	Exposure compensation indicator	99
20	Interval timer indicator	127
21	Multiple exposure indicator	121
22	Aperture lock icon	96
23	Image comment indicator	217
24	Exposure bracketing indicator	100
	White-balance bracketing indicator	105
25	Electronic analog exposure display	95
	Exposure compensation	99
	Bracketing progress indicator	100–107
	PC mode indicator	236

The Rear Control Panel


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
SHOOT ABCD
CUSTOM ABCD
WB-BKT
ISO-AUTO REM
1888.8
K
L M S
RAW + FINE
TIFF NORM
BASIC
A
PRE
K
REC
AM

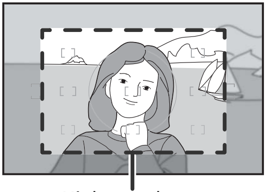
1	Custom settings bank	182
2	"Remaining" indicator	28
3	Shooting menu settings bank	169
4	ISO sensitivity indicator	52
	Auto ISO sensitivity indicator	191
5	ISO sensitivity	52
	ISO sensitivity (high gain)	52
	Number of exposures remaining	28
	Length of voice memo	149
	White balance fine-tuning	57
	White balance preset number	60
	Color temperature	59
	PC mode indicator	236
6	"K" (appears when memory remains for over 1000 exposures)	51
	Color temperature indicator	59
7	Image quality	45
8	Image size	48
9	White-balance bracketing indicator	105
10	Voice memo recording indicator (shooting mode)	149
11	Voice memo status indicator	149
12	Voice memo recording mode	150
13	White balance mode	55

The Viewfinder Display


1
2
WB
BKT
A
K
PRE
MS
ISO-A
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
BKT
AE-L
B/W
L
X
F
PS0AM
K
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21

The High Speed Crop

When **On** is selected for **High-speed crop**, the high-speed crop is shown by the transparent area in the viewfinder.


High-speed crop

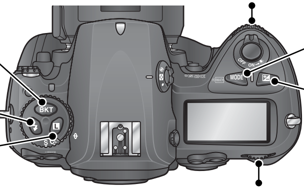
1	8-mm (0.31 in.) reference circle for center-weighted metering	85
2	Focus brackets (focus areas)	76
	Spot metering targets	86
3	Focus indicator	32, 85
4	Metering	86
5	Bracketing indicator	100
6	Autoexposure (AE) lock	97
7	Black-and-white indicator	72
8	Shutter-speed lock icon	96
9	Shutter speed	87–96
10	Aperture lock icon	96
11	Aperture (f/-number)	87–96
	Aperture (number of stops)	93, 95
12	Exposure mode	87
13	Exposure compensation indicator	99
14	Frame count	28
	Number of exposures remaining	28
	Number of shots remaining before memory buffer fills	44
	Exposure compensation value	99
	PC mode indicator	236
15	"K" (appears when memory remains for over 1000 exposures)	51
16	Flash-ready indicator	116
17	Battery indicator	27
18	FV lock indicator	114
19	Sync indicator	113
20	Aperture stop indicator	93, 95
21	Electronic analog exposure display	95
	Exposure compensation	99
22	Voice memo status indicator	149
23	White-balance bracketing indicator	105
24	White-balance mode	51
25	Image size	48
26	Image quality	45
27	ISO sensitivity indicator	52
	Auto ISO sensitivity indicator	191
28	ISO sensitivity	52

No Battery

When the battery is totally exhausted or no battery is inserted, the display in the viewfinder will dim. This is normal and does not indicate a malfunction. The viewfinder display will return to normal when a fully-charged battery is inserted.

The Command Dials

The main- and sub-command dials are used alone or in combination with other controls to adjust a variety of settings. For ease of access when taking photographs in tall (portrait) orientation, dials that duplicate the functions of the main and sub-command dials have been placed close to the shutter-release button for vertical shooting (👁 31).


Sub-command dial
Bracketing button
Flash sync mode button
Command lock button
Exposure mode button
Exposure compensation button
Main command dial
BKT
MODE
OFF
ON

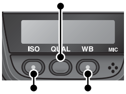
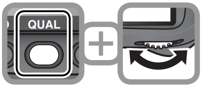
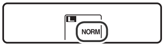
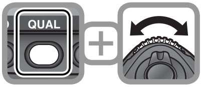
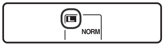
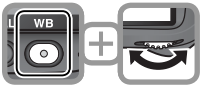
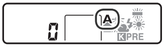
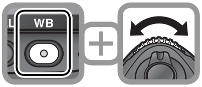
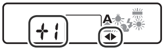


Image quality/size button
ISO
QUAL
WB
MIC
ISO sensitivity button
White balance button

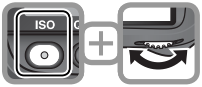
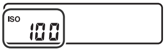
Image quality and size

	Set image quality (👁 45).	
	Choose an image size (👁 48).	

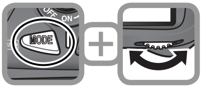
White balance

	Choose a white balance setting (👁 55).	
	Fine-tune white balance/choose a color temperature/choose a white balance preset (👁 56, 59, 60).	

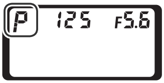
ISO sensitivity

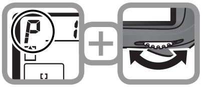
	Set ISO sensitivity (👁 52).	

Exposure

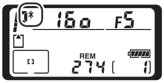


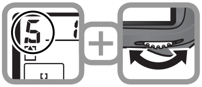
Choose the exposure mode (☞ 87–95).



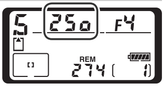


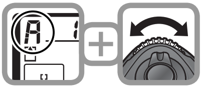
Choose a combination of aperture and shutter speed (exposure mode **P**; ☞ 89).


P* 160 F5
REM 274

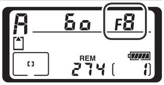


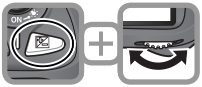
Choose a shutter speed (exposure mode **S** or **M**; ☞ 90, 94).


S 250 F4
REM 274

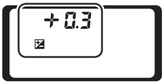


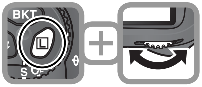
Choose an aperture (exposure mode **A** or **M**; ☞ 92, 94).


A 60 F8
REM 274

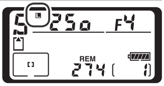


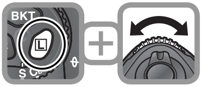
Set exposure compensation (☞ 99).



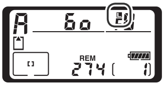


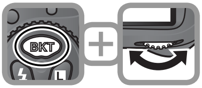
Shutter speed lock (exposure mode **S** or **M**; ☞ 96).


S 250 F4
REM 274

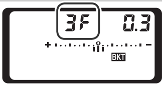


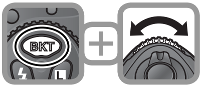
Aperture lock (exposure mode **A** or **M**; ☞ 96).



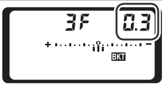


Activate or cancel bracketing/select number of shots in bracketing sequence (☞ 100, 105).

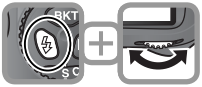




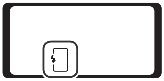
Select bracketing exposure increment (☞ 101, 105).



Flash settings

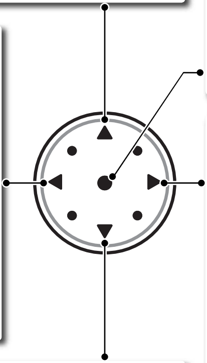


Choose a flash sync mode for optional Speedlight (☞ 112).



The Multi Selector

The multi selector is used for the following operations:



- **Menu navigation**: Move highlight bar up (☞ 40).
- **Help**: Scroll up (☞ 39).
- **Shooting**: Select focus area above current focus area (☞ 76).
- **Full-frame playback**: Display previous image (☞ 35).
- **Thumbnail playback**: Highlight thumbnail above current thumbnail (☞ 142).

- **Menu navigation**: Select highlighted item (☞ 40).
- **Shooting**: Select center focus area (☞ 76).
- **Playback**: Change number of images displayed (☞ 142).

- **Menu navigation**: Cancel and return to previous menu (☞ 40).
- **Shooting**:Select focus area to left of current focus area (☞ 76).
- **Full-frame playback**: Display previous page of photo information (☞ 139).
- **Thumbnail playback**:Highlight thumbnail to left of current thumbnail (☞ 142).

- **Menu navigation**: Select highlighted item or display sub-menu (☞ 40).
- **Shooting**: Select focus area to right of current focus area (☞ 76).
- **Full-frame playback**: Display next page of photo information (☞ 139).
- **Thumbnail playback**: Highlight thumbnail to right of current thumbnail (☞ 142).

- **Menu navigation**: Move highlight bar down (☞ 40).
- **Help**: Scroll down (☞ 39).
- **Shooting**: Select focus area below current focus area (☞ 76).
- **Full-frame playback**: Display next image (☞ 35).
- **Thumbnail playback**: Highlight thumbnail below current thumbnail (☞ 142).

The Multi Selector

The ENTER button can also be used to select items highlighted in the camera menus. There may be some cases in which the operations listed on this page do not apply.

First Steps

Getting the Camera Ready for Use

Before using the camera for the first time, complete the following steps:

Step 1 **Attach the Camera Strap** .... 👁 **15**

Step 2 **Insert the Battery** .... 👁 **16**

For more information on batteries and alternative power sources, see:
- Technical Notes: Optional Accessories .... 👁 247
- Caring for the Camera and Battery .... 👁 iv–v

Step 3 **Basic Setup** .... 👁 **17–19**

For information on changing the clock battery, see:
- Technical Notes: Caring for Your Camera .... 👁 255

Step 4 **Attach a Lens** .... 👁 **20–21**

To learn more about the lenses available for the D2Xs, see:
- Technical Notes: Optional Accessories .... 👁 244–246

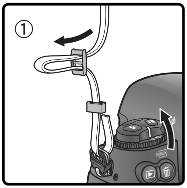
Step 5 **Insert a Memory Card** .... 👁 **22–24**

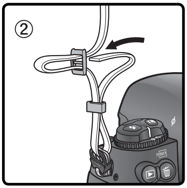
To learn more about compatible memory cards, see:
- Technical Notes: Approved Memory Cards .... 👁 252

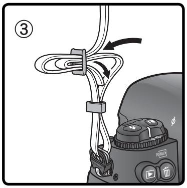
For more information on formatting memory cards, see:
- The Setup Menu: Formatting Memory Cards .... 👁 214

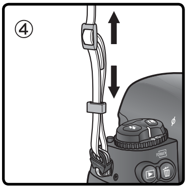
Step 1—Attach the Camera Strap

Attach the camera strap securely to the two eyelets on the camera body as shown below.









Step 2—Insert the Battery

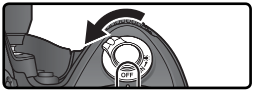
The D2Xs can be used with the supplied rechargeable Nikon EN-EL4a Li-ion battery or an optional EN-EL4 battery.

2.1 Charge the battery

The EN-EL4a is not fully charged at shipment. To maximize shooting time, charge the battery in the supplied MH-21 quick charger before use (☞ 266). About 145 minutes are required to fully recharge the battery when no charge remains.

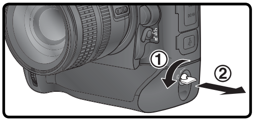
2.2 Turn the camera off

Turn the camera off before inserting or removing batteries.



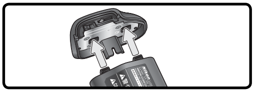
2.3 Remove the battery-chamber cover

Turn the battery-chamber cover latch to the open position (⧀) and remove the battery-chamber cover.



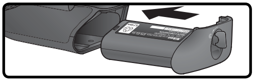
2.4 Attach the battery cover to the battery

The battery can be charged with the cover attached.



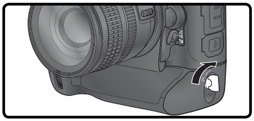
2.5 Insert the battery

Insert the battery as shown at right.



2.6 Latch the battery-chamber cover

To prevent the battery from being dislodged during operation, be sure the cover is securely latched.



Removing the Battery

Before removing the battery, turn the camera off and rotate the battery-chamber cover latch to the open position (⧀).

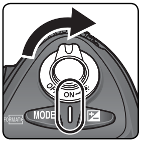
EN-EL4a Rechargeable Li-ion Batteries

The EN-EL4a shares information with compatible devices, enabling the camera to show battery charge state in six levels and the MH-21 to both display the current level and charge the battery appropriately. The **Battery info** option in the setup menu details battery charge, battery life, and the number of pictures taken (☞ 223).

Step 3—Basic Setup

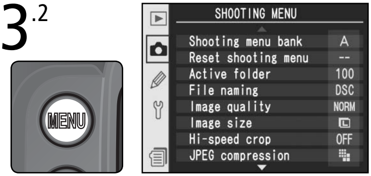
Choose a language and set the time and date as described below.

3.1



Turn camera on.

3.2



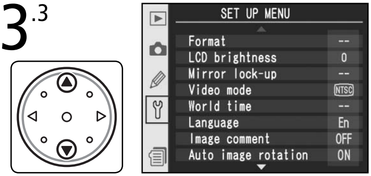
SHOOTING MENU

Shooting menu bank	A
Reset shooting menu	--
Active folder	100
File naming	DSC
Image quality	NORM
Image size	
Hi-speed crop	OFF
JPEG compression	

Display menus.*

* If option is highlighted, press multi selector to left until icon at left of menu is selected.

3.3

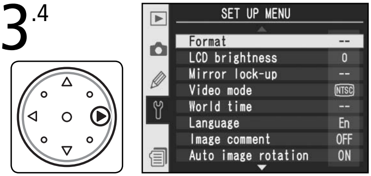


SET UP MENU

Format	--
LCD brightness	0
Mirror lock-up	--
Video mode	NTSC
World time	--
Language	En
Image comment	OFF
Auto image rotation	ON

Display SET UP menu.

3.4

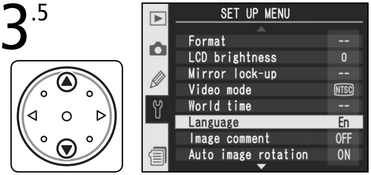


SET UP MENU

Format	--
LCD brightness	0
Mirror lock-up	--
Video mode	NTSC
World time	--
Language	En
Image comment	OFF
Auto image rotation	ON

Position cursor in SET UP menu.

3.5

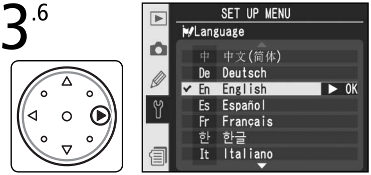


SET UP MENU

Format	--
LCD brightness	0
Mirror lock-up	--
Video mode	NTSC
World time	--
Language	En
Image comment	OFF
Auto image rotation	ON

Highlight **Language**.

3.6



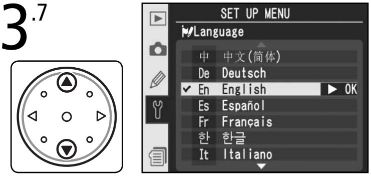
SET UP MENU

Language

中	中文(简体)	
De	Deutsch	
✓ En	English	▶ OK
Es	Español	
Fr	Français	
한	한글	
It	Italiano	

Display options.

3.7



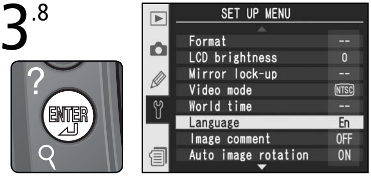
SET UP MENU

Language

中	中文(简体)	
De	Deutsch	
✓ En	English	▶ OK
Es	Español	
Fr	Français	
한	한글	
It	Italiano	

Highlight option.

3.8

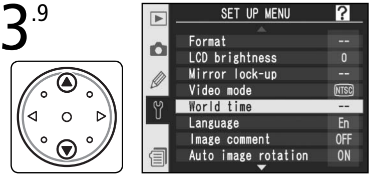


SET UP MENU

Format	--
LCD brightness	0
Mirror lock-up	--
Video mode	NTSC
World time	--
Language	En
Image comment	OFF
Auto image rotation	ON

Return to SET UP menu.

3.9

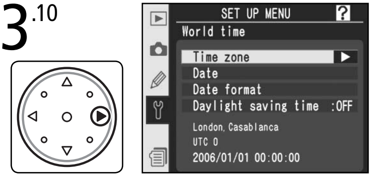


SET UP MENU ?

Format --
LCD brightness 0
Mirror lock-up --
Video mode NTSC
World time --
Language En
Image comment OFF
Auto image rotation ON

Highlight **World time**.

3.10



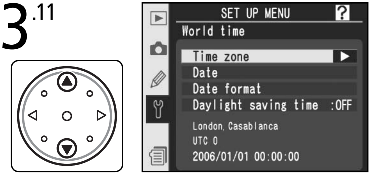
SET UP MENU ?

World time

Time zone ▶
Date
Date format
Daylight saving time :OFF
London, Casablanca
UTC 0
2006/01/01 00:00:00

Display options.

3.11



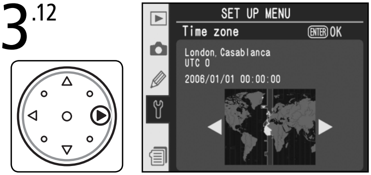
SET UP MENU ?

World time

Time zone ▶
Date
Date format
Daylight saving time :OFF
London, Casablanca
UTC 0
2006/01/01 00:00:00

Highlight **Time zone**.

3.12



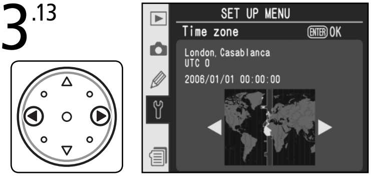
SET UP MENU

Time zone ENTER OK

London, Casablanca
UTC 0
2006/01/01 00:00:00

Display map of world time zones.

3.13



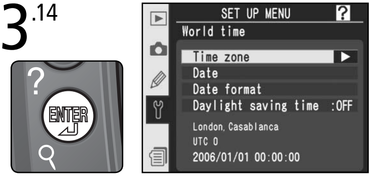
SET UP MENU

Time zone ENTER OK

London, Casablanca
UTC 0
2006/01/01 00:00:00

Select local time zone.[†]

3.14



SET UP MENU ?

World time

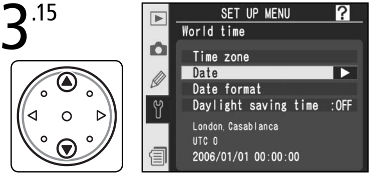
Time zone ▶
Date
Date format
Daylight saving time :OFF
London, Casablanca
UTC 0
2006/01/01 00:00:00

Return to WORLD TIME menu.[‡]

[†] **UTC** field shows time difference between selected time zone and Coordinated Universal Time (UTC), in hours.

[‡] If daylight saving time is in effect in local time zone, highlight **Daylight saving time** and press multi selector to right. Press multi selector down to highlight **On** and press multi selector right. Time will automatically be advanced one hour.

3.15



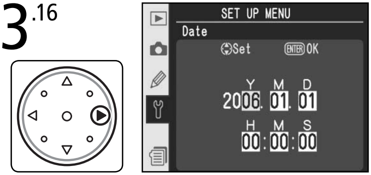
SET UP MENU ?

World time

Time zone
Date ▶
Date format
Daylight saving time :OFF
London, Casablanca
UTC 0
2006/01/01 00:00:00

Highlight **Date**.

3.16



SET UP MENU

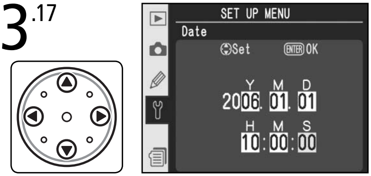
Date

Set ENTER OK

Y M D
2006. 01. 01
H M S
00 : 00 : 00

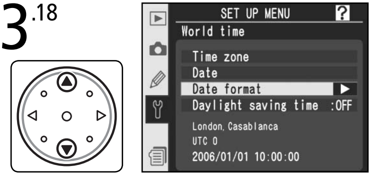
Display DATE menu.

3.17


SET UP MENU
Date
Set
ENTER OK
Y M D
2006. 01. 01
H M S
10:00:00

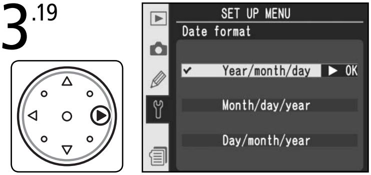
Edit **Y**ear, **M**onth, **D**ay, **H**our, **M**inute, and **S**econd. Press multi selector left or right to select item, up or down to change. Press ENTER button to set date and time and return to to WORLD TIME menu.

3.18


SET UP MENU
?
World time
Time zone
Date
Date format ▶
Daylight saving time :OFF
London, Casablanca
UTC 0
2006/01/01 10:00:00

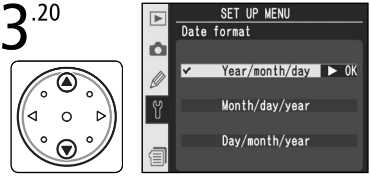
Highlight **Date format**.

3.19


SET UP MENU
Date format
✓ Year/month/day ▶ OK
Month/day/year
Day/month/year

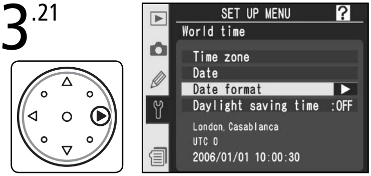
Display options.

3.20


SET UP MENU
Date format
✓ Year/month/day ▶ OK
Month/day/year
Day/month/year

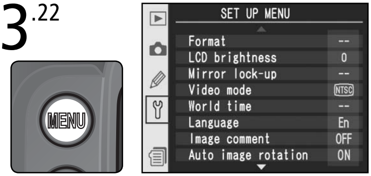
Choose order in which date is listed.

3.21


SET UP MENU
?
World time
Time zone
Date
Date format ▶
Daylight saving time :OFF
London, Casablanca
UTC 0
2006/01/01 10:00:30

Return to WORLD TIME menu.

3.22


MENU
SET UP MENU
Format --
LCD brightness 0
Mirror lock-up --
Video mode NTSC
World time --
Language En
Image comment OFF
Auto image rotation ON

Return to SET UP menu.

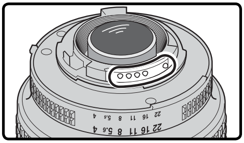
The camera clock is less accurate than most watches and household clocks. Check the clock regularly against more accurate time pieces and reset as necessary. The clock can be reset using the **World time** option in the setup menu (☞ 213).

The Clock Battery

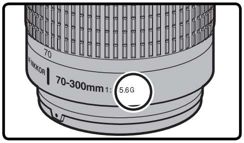
The clock-calendar is powered by a separate, non-rechargeable CR1616 lithium battery with a life of about four years. When this battery is exhausted, a CLOCK icon will be displayed in the top control panel while the exposure meters are on. For information on replacing the clock battery, see "Technical Notes: Caring for the Camera" (☞ 255).

Step 4—Attach a Lens

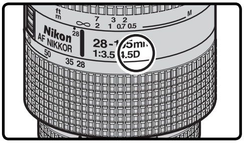
Nikon recommends using a type G or type D CPU lens to take full advantage of the features the camera offers.


22 16 11 8 5.6 4

CPU lenses have CPU contacts


70
AF NIKKOR
70-300mm 1:
5.6G

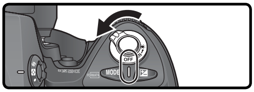
Type G lens


ft
m
∞ 7 3 2
2 1 0.7 0.5
M
Nikon
AF NIKKOR
28
28-105mm
1:3.5-4.5D
50
35 28

Type D lens

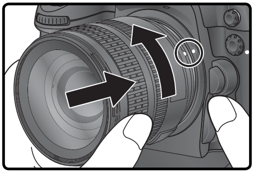
4.1 Turn the camera off

Turn the camera off before attaching or removing lenses.



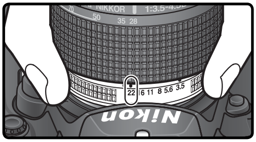
4.2 Attach a lens

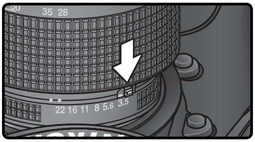
Keeping the mounting mark on the lens aligned with the mounting mark on the camera body, position the lens in the camera's bayonet mount. Being careful not to press the lens-release button, rotate the lens counter-clockwise until it clicks into place.



4.3 Lock aperture at the minimum setting

This step is not necessary if you are using a type G lens not equipped with an aperture ring. If you are using a lens of another type, lock aperture at the minimum setting (highest f/-number).

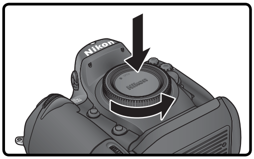

NIKKOR
1:3.5-4.5D
50
35 28
22 16 11 8 5.6 3.5
Nikon


35 28
22 16 11 8 5.6 3.5

If this step is omitted when attaching a CPU lens, the aperture displays in the control panel and viewfinder will show a blinking FEE when the camera is turned on. Photographs can not be taken until the camera is turned off and aperture locked at the highest f/-number.

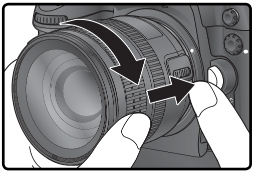
Protect the Camera from Dirt and Dust

Any dust, dirt, or other foreign matter inside your camera could show up as specks or blotches in your photographs or the viewfinder display. When no lens is in place, keep the lens mount covered with the supplied BF-1A body cap . When exchanging lens or replacing the body cap, keep the lens mount pointed down.



Detaching the Lens

Be sure the camera is off when removing or exchanging lenses. To remove the lens, press and hold the lens-release button while turning the lens clockwise.

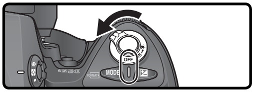


Step 5—Insert a Memory Card

In place of film, the D2Xs uses CompactFlash memory cards or microdrive cards to store photographs. For a list of approved memory cards, see "Technical Notes: Approved Memory Cards" (👁 252).

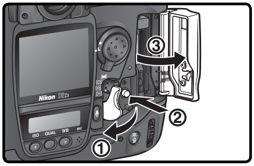
5.1 Turn the camera off

Turn the camera off before inserting or removing memory cards.



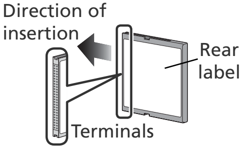
5.2 Open the card slot cover

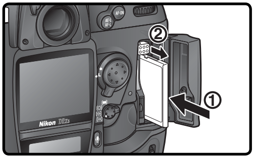
Open the door protecting the card-slot cover release button (①) and press the release button (②) to open the card slot (③).



5.3 Insert a memory card

Insert the memory card with the rear label toward the monitor (①). When the memory card is fully inserted, the green access lamp will light and the eject button will pop up (②). Close the card slot cover.



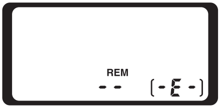


✓ *Inserting Memory Cards*

Insert the memory card terminals first. Inserting the card upside down or backwards could damage the camera or the card. Check to be sure that the card is in the correct orientation.

No Memory Card

If no memory card is inserted in the camera when a charged EN-EL4a battery is inserted or the camera is powered by an AC adapter, [-E-] will appear in the exposure-count displays in the control panel and viewfinder.



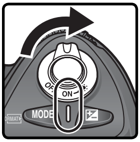
5.4 Format the memory card

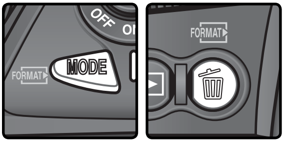
Memory cards must be formatted before first use.

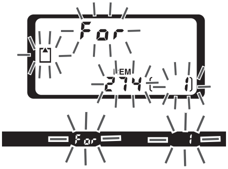
✓ Formatting Memory Cards

Formatting memory cards permanently deletes any data they may contain. Be sure to copy any photographs and other data you wish to keep to a computer before proceeding (235–238).

To format the card, turn the camera on and hold the FORMAT (MODE and 🗑) buttons down simultaneously for approximately two seconds. A blinking For will appear in the shutter-speed display and the frame count will blink. Pressing both buttons together a second time will format the memory card. Press any other button to exit without formatting.







During formatting, the letters For will appear in the frame-count display. When formatting is complete, the frame-count display will show the number of photographs that can be recorded at current settings.

✓ During Formatting

Do not remove the card or battery or unplug the AC adapter (available separately) during formatting.

Format (214)

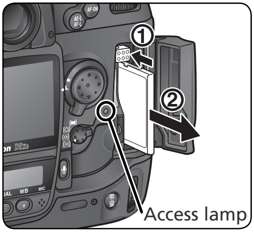
Memory cards can also be formatted using the **Format** option in the setup menu.

Memory Cards

- Memory cards may be hot after use. Observe due caution when removing memory cards from the camera.
- Format memory cards before first use.
- Turn the power off before inserting or removing memory cards. Do not remove memory cards from the camera, turn the camera off, or remove or disconnect the power source during formatting or while data are being recorded, deleted, or copied to a computer. Failure to observe these precautions could result in loss of data or in damage to the camera or card.
- Do not touch the card terminals with your fingers or metal objects.
- Do not apply force to the card casing. Failure to observe this precaution could damage the card.
- Do not bend, drop, or subject to strong physical shocks.
- Do not expose to water, high levels of humidity, or direct sunlight.

Removing Memory Cards

Memory cards can be removed without loss of data when the camera is off. Before removing the memory card, wait for the green card access lamp next to the card slot cover to go out and then turn the camera off. ***Do* NOT *attempt to remove the card while the access lamp is on.*** Failure to observe this precaution could result in loss of data or in damage to the camera or card. Open the door protecting the card-slot cover release button and press the release button to open the card slot, then press the eject button to partially eject the card (①). The card can then be removed by hand (②). Do not push on the memory card while pressing the eject button. Failure to observe this precaution could damage the memory card.



Tutorial

Basic Photography and Playback

Basic Photography
👁 26–34

Basic Playback
👁 35

This chapter takes you step-by-step through the process of taking your first photographs and playing them back.

Basic Photography
This section describes how to use autofocus and programmed auto autoexposure for simple, "point-and-shoot" photography that will produce optimal results in most situations.

Basic Playback
Read this section for information on viewing photographs in the monitor.

Basic Photography

Taking Your First Photographs

There are six basic steps to taking photographs:

Step 1 **Ready the Camera** 27–28

To learn how to restore settings to their default values, see:

- Taking Photographs: Two-Button Reset 136
- Menu Guide: The Shooting Menu—Reset Shooting Menu 171
- Menu Guide: The Custom Settings Menu—Menu Reset 183–184

Step 2 **Adjust Camera Settings** 29–30

To learn more about the following camera settings, see:

- Taking Photographs: Choosing a Shooting Mode 43–44
- Taking Photographs: Image Quality and Size 45–51
- Taking Photographs: ISO Sensitivity 52–53
- Taking Photographs: White Balance 55–67
- Taking Photographs: Image Adjustment 68–73
- Taking Photographs: Focus 74–85
- Taking Photographs: Exposure 86–107

Step 3 **Frame the Photograph** 31

To learn how to preview the effects of aperture, see:

- Taking Photographs: Exposure 87

To learn about optional viewfinder accessories, see:

- Technical Notes: Optional Accessories 248

Step 4 **Focus** 32

To learn more about focus options, see:

- Taking Photographs: Focus 74–85

Step 5 **Check Exposure** 33

To learn how to change the composition after setting exposure, see:

- Taking Photographs: Exposure 97

To learn more about flash photography, see:

- Taking Photographs: Flash Photography 108–117

Step 6 **Take the Photograph** 34

For information on time-lapse photography, cropping, delaying shutter release, image overlay, and multiple exposure, see:

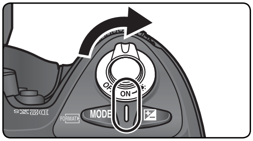
- Taking Photographs: Overlay/Multiple Exposure 118–122
- Taking Photographs: Trimming Photographs 123–124
- Taking Photographs: Interval Timer Photography 125–129
- Taking Photographs: Self-Timer Mode 130

Step 1—Ready the Camera

Before taking photographs, ready the camera as described below.

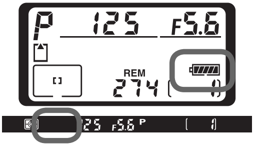
1.1 Turn the camera on

The control panel will turn on and the display in the viewfinder will light.



1.2 Check the battery level

Check the battery level in the viewfinder or top control panel.



Icon*			
Control panel	**View-finder**	**Status**	**Notes**
▮▮▮▮▮	—	Battery fully charged	Aperture and shutter-speed indicators in top control panel and all indicators in viewfinder turn off if no operations are performed for 6 s (auto meter off). Press shutter-release button halfway to reactivate display.
▯▮▮▮▮	—	Battery partially discharged	
▯▯▮▮▮	—		
▯▯▯▮▮	—		
▯▯▯▯▮	▯▯▯▯▮	Low battery	Ready fully-charged spare battery.
▯▯▯▯▮ (flashes)	▯▯▯▯▮ (flashes)	Battery exhausted	Shutter release disabled.

* No icon displayed when camera powered by optional AC adapter.

The Battery Indicator

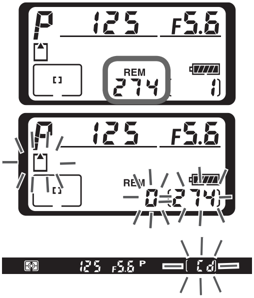
If the segments in the control panel battery icon blink on and off, the camera is calculating the battery charge. The battery level will be displayed in about three seconds.

The ▯▯▯▯▮ Icon

A flashing ▯▯▯▯▮ icon in the control panel indicates that the battery has malfunctioned or is otherwise unsuitable for use in the D2Xs (the ▯▯▯▯▮ icon in the viewfinder may also flash). Contact a Nikon-authorized service representative.

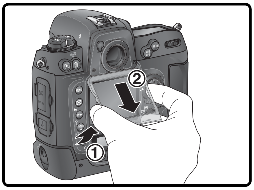
1.3 Check the number of exposures remaining

The exposure-count display in the top control panel shows the number of photographs that can be taken at current settings. When this number reaches zero, the ▯ icon will flash in the top control panel and a flashing Cd icon will appear in the viewfinder. No further pictures can be taken until you delete pictures or insert a new memory card. You may be able to take additional pictures at lower image quality or size settings.

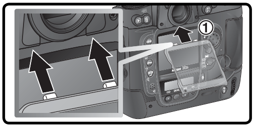


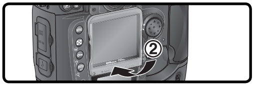
The Monitor Cover

A clear plastic cover (the BM-3 LCD monitor cover) is provided with the camera to keep the monitor clean, and to protect the monitor when the camera is not in use or when you are transporting the camera. To remove the monitor cover, hold the camera firmly, take the cover by its edges, and pull the bottom of the cover gently outwards as shown at right (①). Once the cover is unlatched, you can move it slightly away from the monitor and then remove it as shown (②).



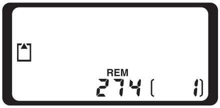
To replace the cover for shooting or storage, insert the two projections on the top of the cover into the matching indentations above the camera monitor (①), then press the bottom of the cover until you hear it click into place (②).





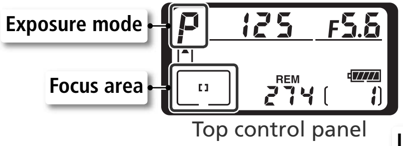
Camera Off Display

If the camera is turned off with a battery and memory card inserted, the frame count and number of exposures remaining will be displayed (some memory cards may only display this information when the camera is on).



Step 2—Adjust Camera Settings

This tutorial describes how to take photographs at the default settings listed in the table below, using a type G or D lens. Information on when and how to change settings from their default values is provided in "Taking Photographs" (☞ 37).


Exposure mode
Focus area
P
125
F5.6
REM
274
1
Top control panel

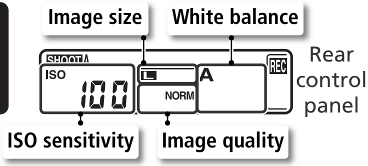
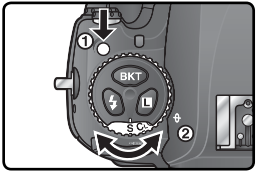


Image size
White balance
SHOOT A
ISO
100
L
NORM
A
REC
Rear control panel
ISO sensitivity
Image quality

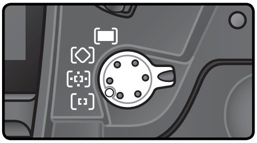
Option	Default	Description	☞
Image quality	**NORM** (JPEG Normal)	Pictures are compressed for balance between image quality and file size that is ideal for snapshots.	45–48
Image size	**L** (Large)	Images are 4,288 × 2,848 pixels in size.	48–49
ISO sensitivity	**100**	Sensitivity (digital equivalent of film speed) set to value roughly equivalent to ISO 100.	52–53
White balance	**A** (Auto)	White balance is adjusted automatically for natural colors under most types of lighting.	55–67
Exposure mode	**P** (Programmed auto)	Built-in exposure program automatically adjusts shutter speed and aperture for optimal exposure in most situations.	87–95
Focus area	Center focus area	Camera focuses on subject in center focus area.	76

2.1 Set the shooting mode to single frame (☞ 43)

Hold the mode-dial lock release down (①) and turn the shooting mode dial (②) to **S** (single frame). At this setting, the camera will take one photograph each time the shutter-release button is pressed.

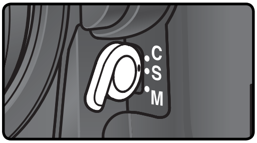


2.2 Choose single-area AF (👁 78)



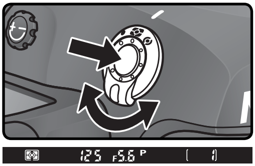
Rotate the AF-area mode selector until it clicks into place pointing to [▫] (single-area AF). At this setting, the user can choose from eleven focus areas. Pressing the shutter-release button halfway locks focus at the distance to the subject in the selected focus area.

2.3 Choose single-servo autofocus (👁 74)



Rotate the focus-mode selector until it clicks into place pointing to **S** (single-servo autofocus). At this setting, the camera will automatically focus on the subject in the selected focus area when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. Pictures can only be taken when the camera is in focus.

2.4 Choose matrix metering (👁 86)

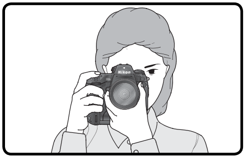


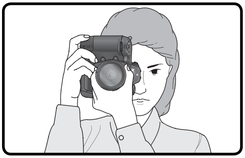
Press the metering selector lock button and rotate the metering selector to ⊡ (matrix metering). Matrix metering uses information from all areas of the frame to determine exposure, ensuring optimal results for the entire frame. If a type G or D lens is mounted on the camera, 3D matrix metering II is used for exposure control that takes into account maximum brightness, contrast, and the distance to the subject.

When matrix metering is selected, the metering display in the viewfinder shows ⊡.

Step 3—Frame a Photograph

To prevent blurred photographs caused by unsteady hands (camera shake), hold the camera steadily in both hands, with your elbows propped lightly against your torso for support. Hold the handgrip in your right hand and cradle the camera body or lens with your left.



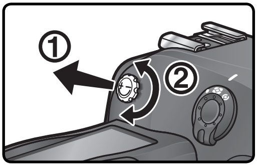


The shutter-release button for vertical shooting (👁 4) can be used when taking photographs in portrait (tall) orientation.

The recommended stance for taking photographs is with one foot a half pace in front of the other and your upper body stable.

Viewfinder Focus

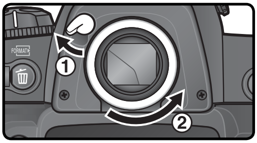
The viewfinder is equipped with diopter adjustment to accommodate individual differences in vision. To adjust viewfinder focus, pull the diopter adjustment knob out (①) and rotate it until the viewfinder display and focus brackets are in sharp focus (②). When operating the diopter adjustment knob with your eye to the viewfinder, be careful not to put your fingers or fingernails in your eye.



Diopter can be adjusted in the range –3 m^{-1} to +1 m^{-1}. Corrective lenses (available separately; 👁 248) allow diopters of –6 m^{-1} to +3 m^{-1}.

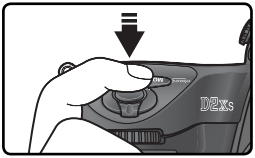
Attaching Diopter Adjustment Viewfinder Lenses

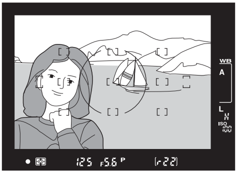
Before attaching a diopter-adjustment viewfinder lens, remove the DK-17 viewfinder eyepiece by closing the viewfinder shutter to release the eyepiece lock (①) and then unscrewing the eyepiece as shown at right (②).



Step 4—Focus

In single-servo AF, the camera focuses on the subject in the selected focus area when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. After centering the focus brackets on your subject, press the shutter-release button halfway and check focus in the viewfinder.



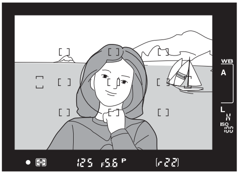


Viewfinder display	Description
●	Subject in focus.
▶	Focus point is between camera and subject.
◀	Focus point is behind subject.
▶ ◀ (flashes)	Camera unable to focus on subject in focus brackets using autofocus.

To focus on an off-center subject, use focus lock (👁 82–83) or select the focus area containing your subject using the multi selector (👁 76). For information on what to do if the camera is unable to focus using autofocus, see "Getting Good Results with Autofocus" (👁 84).

Step 5—Check Exposure

In exposure mode **P** (programmed auto), the camera automatically sets shutter speed and aperture when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. Before shooting, check the shutter-speed and aperture indicators in the viewfinder. If the photo would be under- or over-exposed at current settings, one of the following indicators will appear in either the shutter-speed or aperture display.

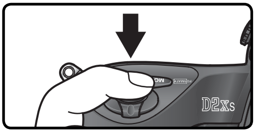


Indicator	Description
Hi	Photo will be overexposed. Use optional Neutral Density (ND) filter.
Lo	Photo will be underexposed. Raise ISO sensitivity (👁 52–53) or use optional Speedlight (👁 108).

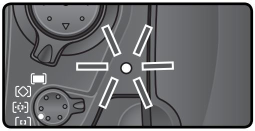
Shutter Speed and Camera Shake

To prevent blurring caused by camera shake, the shutter speed should be faster than the inverse of the focal length of the lens, in seconds (for example, if a lens has a focal length of 50 mm, shutter speed should be faster than 1/60 s). Use of a tripod is recommended when shooting at slower shutter speeds. To prevent blur, try increasing ISO sensitivity (👁 52–53) or using a VR lens. An optional Speedlight (👁 108) can be used to prevent blur at shutter speeds of 1/60 s or slower.

Step 6—Take the Photograph



Smoothly press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down.



While the photograph is being recorded to the memory card, the access lamp next to the card slot cover will light. ***Do not eject the memory card, turn the camera off, or remove or disconnect the power source until the lamp has gone out.*** Removing the memory card or cutting power in these circumstances could result in loss of data.

Do Not Photograph Strong Light Sources

Avoid taking pictures with the camera focused on the sun or other strong light source. Intense light may cause deterioration in the image sensor the camera uses in place of film. It may also produce a white blur effect in photographs.

Rotate Tall (👁 167)

This playback menu option controls whether portrait-orientation photographs taken with **On** selected for the **Auto image rotation** option in the setup menu are automatically rotated during playback.

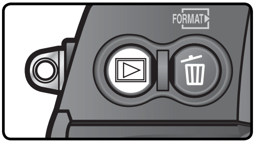
Image Review (👁 166)

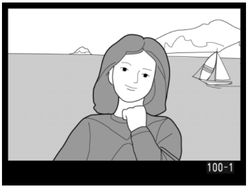
Photographs can be viewed at any time during or after recording by pressing the ▶ button. When **On** is selected for the **Image review** option in the playback menu, photographs are automatically displayed in the monitor immediately after shooting.

Basic Playback

Viewing Photographs

To play photographs back, press the ▶ button. The most recent photograph will be displayed in the monitor.





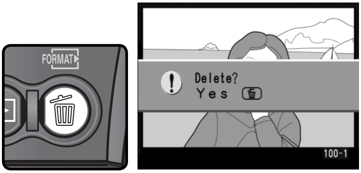
Viewing Additional Photographs

To page through photographs in the order recorded, press the multi selector down. Press the multi selector up to view photographs in reverse order. To scroll rapidly through the images on the memory card, press and hold the up or down buttons on the multi selector.

When the last photograph on the memory card is displayed, you can return to the first photograph by pressing the multi selector down. When the first photograph in memory is displayed, you can view the last photograph by pressing the multi selector up.

Deleting Unwanted Photographs

To delete the photograph currently displayed in the monitor, press the 🗑 button. A confirmation dialog will be displayed. Press the 🗑 button again to delete the image and return to playback. To exit without deleting the picture, press the multi selector left or right.



Take Additional Photographs

To end playback and return to shooting mode, press the ▶ button or press the shutter-release button halfway.

Delete (📖 156)

To delete multiple images, use the **Delete** option in the playback menu.

Taking Photographs

The Details

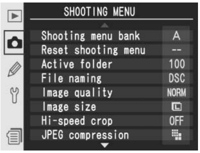
"Tutorial: Basic Photography" described the basic order of operations for taking photographs at the most commonly-used settings. This chapter explains how and when to adjust camera settings for different shooting conditions.

Using Camera Menus ☞ 39–40
High-Speed Crop ☞ 41–42
Choosing a Shooting Mode ☞ 43–44
Image Quality and Size ☞ 45–51
ISO Sensitivity ☞ 52–54
White Balance ☞ 55–67
Image Adjustment ☞ 68–73
Focus ☞ 74–85
Exposure ☞ 86–107
Flash Photography ☞ 108–117
Overlay/Multiple Exposure ☞ 118–122
Trimming Photographs ☞ 123–124
Interval Timer Photography ☞ 125–129
Self-Timer Mode ☞ 130
Non-CPU Lenses ☞ 131–134
Using a GPS Unit ☞ 135
Two-Button Reset ☞ 136

The chart below shows the basic order for adjusting settings when taking photographs. Before proceeding, be sure to read “Using Camera Menus” (39) for information on menu operations.

Will this be a single photo, or a series of photos?		
	High-Speed Crop	41–42
	Choosing a Shooting Mode	43–44
How will this photograph be used?		
	Image Quality and Size	45–51
	Image Adjustment	68–73
What lighting is available?		
	ISO Sensitivity	52–54
	White Balance	55–67
What is the subject, and how will I compose the photograph?		
	Focus	74–85
How important is background lighting to the photograph?		
	Exposure: Metering	86
What is more important, shutter speed or aperture?		
	Exposure: Exposure Mode	87–95
Is the subject very bright, very dark, or high contrast?		
	Exposure: Exposure Compensation	99
	Exposure: Bracketing	100–107
Will I need a flash?		
	Flash Photography	108–117
Will I need the following advanced options?		
	Overlay/Multiple Exposure	118–122
	Trimming Photographs	123–124
How do I want to control the shutter?		
	Interval Timer Photography	125–129
	Self-Timer Mode	130

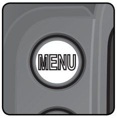
The next four sections involve settings that can be accessed via the camera menus. To view the menus, turn the camera on and press the MENU button.

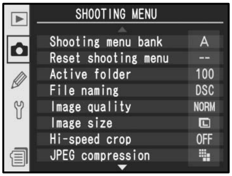

SHOOTING MENU
Shooting menu bank A
Reset shooting menu --
Active folder 100
File naming DSC
Image quality NORM
Image size □
Hi-speed crop OFF
JPEG compression ▦

Choosing a Menu

There are five main menus: the playback menu, the shooting menu, the Custom Settings menu, the setup menu, and Recent Settings. When the menu button is pressed, the camera displays the last menu used. To select a different menu:

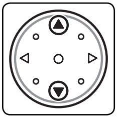
1

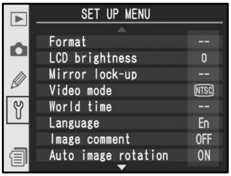



SHOOTING MENU
Shooting menu bank A
Reset shooting menu --
Active folder 100
File naming DSC
Image quality NORM
Image size □
Hi-speed crop OFF
JPEG compression ▦

If menu item is highlighted, press MENU.

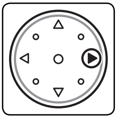
2

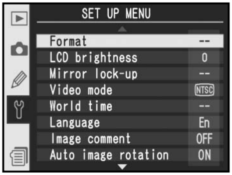



SET UP MENU
Format --
LCD brightness 0
Mirror lock-up --
Video mode NTSC
World time --
Language En
Image comment OFF
Auto image rotation ON

Select menu.

3

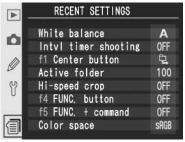



SET UP MENU
Format --
LCD brightness 0
Mirror lock-up --
Video mode NTSC
World time --
Language En
Image comment OFF
Auto image rotation ON

Position cursor in selected menu.

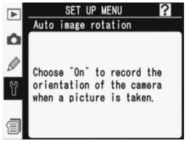
Recent Settings

The Recent Settings (▤) menu lists the eight most recently selected items in the shooting and Custom Settings menus. The **Recent settings** option (👁 219) in the setup menu can be used to lock the menu or delete items to customize the menu.


RECENT SETTINGS
White balance A
Intvl timer shooting OFF
f1 Center button □
Active folder 100
Hi-speed crop OFF
f4 FUNC. button OFF
f5 FUNC. + command OFF
Color space sRGB

Help

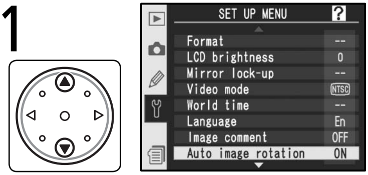
For help on menu options, press the 🔑 button. A description of the currently selected option or menu will be displayed. Press the multi selector up or down to scroll the display.


SET UP MENU ?
Auto image rotation
Choose "On" to record the orientation of the camera when a picture is taken.

Making a Selection

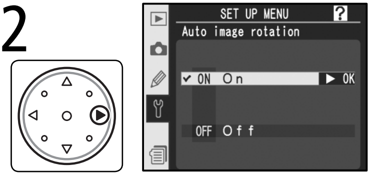
To modify settings for an item in the current menu:

1


SET UP MENU
Format --
LCD brightness 0
Mirror lock-up --
Video mode NTSC
World time --
Language En
Image comment OFF
Auto image rotation ON

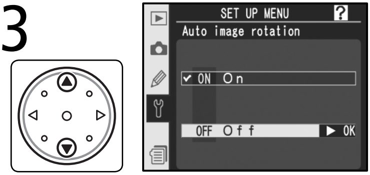
Highlight menu item.

2


SET UP MENU
Auto image rotation
✓ ON On ▶ OK
OFF Off

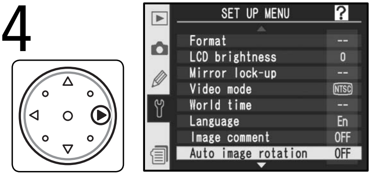
Display options.

3


SET UP MENU
Auto image rotation
✓ ON On
OFF Off ▶ OK

Highlight option.

4


SET UP MENU
Format --
LCD brightness 0
Mirror lock-up --
Video mode NTSC
World time --
Language En
Image comment OFF
Auto image rotation OFF

Make selection.

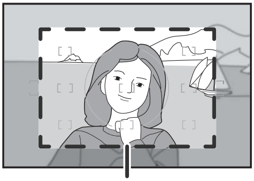
- To return to the previous menu without making a selection, press the multi selector to the left.
- The selection for some options is made from a sub-menu. Repeat steps 3 and 4 to make a selection from a sub-menu.
- Some menu items are not available while images are being recorded to the memory card.
- Pressing the ENTER button or the center of the multi selector performs the same function as pressing the multi selector to the right. In some cases, a selection can only be made using ENTER button or the center of the multi selector.

Exiting the Menus

To exit the menus, press the MENU button (if a menu option is highlighted, press the MENU button twice). You can also exit the menus by pressing the ▶ button to exit to playback mode or by turning the camera off. To exit the menus and focus the camera for the next shot, press the shutter-release button halfway.

High-Speed Crop

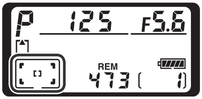
High-Speed Frame Advance



High-speed crop

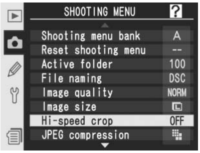
When high-speed crop is on, photographs will include only the area framed in the viewfinder high-speed crop (see right). Photographs can be recorded at up to eight frames per second, and more photographs can be taken before the memory buffer fills (👁 43).

High-speed crop is turned on and off using the FUNC. button or the **Hi-speed crop** item in the shooting menu.

Option	Description
Off (default)	High-speed crop off. Photographs include entire area visible in viewfinder.
On	High-speed crop on. High-speed crop is displayed in viewfinder and high-speed crop indicator is displayed in top control panel. 

The Hi-Speed Crop Menu

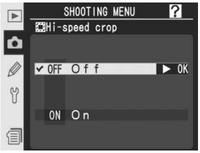
1 Highlight **Hi-speed crop** in the shooting menu (👁 168) and press the multi selector to the right.



SHOOTING MENU ?

Shooting menu bank	A
Reset shooting menu	--
Active folder	100
File naming	DSC
Image quality	NORM
Image size	
Hi-speed crop	OFF
JPEG compression	

2 Highlight the desired option and press the multi selector to the right. The shooting menu will be displayed.



SHOOTING MENU ?

Hi-speed crop

✓ OFF Off ▶ OK

ON On

Focus Areas

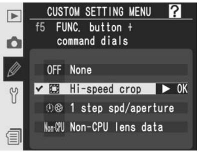
The two focus areas outside the high-speed crop are not available when high-speed crop is on (👁 76).

Image Size

Selecting high-speed crop reduces image size (👁 48).

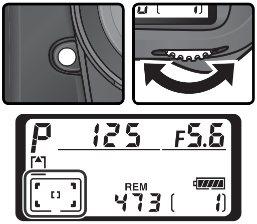
The FUNC. Button

1 Select **Hi-speed crop** for Custom Setting f5 (**FUNC. + command**; 209).



CUSTOM SETTING MENU
f5 FUNC. button + command dials
OFF None
✓ Hi-speed crop ▶ OK
1 step spd/aperture
Non-CPU Non-CPU lens data

2 Press the FUNC. button and rotate the main command dial until the high-speed crop indicator is displayed in the top control panel.

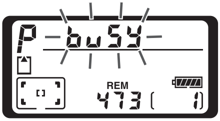


The Viewfinder Crop Display

The brightness of the area outside the high-speed crop varies with aperture.

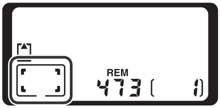
"Busy"

If high-speed crop is turned on or off while pictures are being recorded to the memory card, buSY will flash in the top control panel and no photographs can be taken until all pictures have been recorded or the original high-speed crop setting has been restored.



Camera Off Display

If high-speed crop is on when the camera is turned off, the high-speed crop indicator will be displayed in the top control panel.



Choosing a Shooting Mode

Single Frame, Continuous, Self-Timer, or Mirror Up

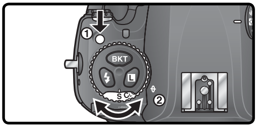
Shooting mode determines how the camera takes photographs: one at a time, in a continuous sequence, with a timed shutter-release delay, or with the mirror raised to enhance shutter response and minimize vibration.

Mode	Description
S Single frame	Camera takes one photograph each time shutter-release button is pressed. Access lamp will light while photo is recorded; next shot can be taken immediately if enough space remains in memory buffer.
CL Continuous low speed	While shutter-release button is held down, camera records 1–4 frames per second (1–7 fps when high-speed crop is on; 🔍 41).* Frame rate can be chosen using Custom Setting d1 (**Shooting Speed**; 🔍 197).
CH Continuous high speed	While shutter-release button is held down, camera records up to 5 frames per second (8 fps when high-speed crop is on; 🔍 41).*
⏲ Self-timer	Use the self-timer for self-portraits or to reduce blurring caused by camera shake (🔍 130).
M-UP Mirror up	Press shutter-release button once to raise mirror, again to take photograph (shutter will be released automatically if shutter-release button is not pressed for 30 s after mirror up). Mirror will be lowered after shutter is released. Choose this mode to minimize camera shake in situations in which the least camera movement can result in blurred photographs. Note that autofocus, metering, and framing can not be confirmed in the viewfinder while mirror is raised.

* Average frame rate with continuous-servo AF, manual or shutter-priority auto exposure, a shutter speed of 1/250 s or faster, and memory remaining in memory buffer. Number of pictures that can be stored in buffer depends on options selected for image quality and **Hi-speed crop** (see right; figures assume that ISO sensitivity is set to ISO 100 equivalent, long exposure noise reduction is off, and **Size priority** is selected for **JPEG compression**).

Quality	Hi-speed crop	
	Off	On
Uncompressed NEF+JPEG	16	28
Compressed NEF+JPEG	16	28
Uncompressed NEF	17	29
Compressed NEF	17	29
TIFF (RGB)	16	28
JPEG	22	38

To choose a shooting mode, press the mode dial lock release and turn the mode dial to the desired setting.



The Memory Buffer

The camera is equipped with a memory buffer for temporary storage, allowing shooting to continue while photographs are being saved to the memory card. The frame rate will drop when the buffer is full.

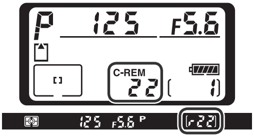
While photographs are being recorded to the memory card, the access lamp next to the memory card slot will light. Depending on the number of the images in the buffer, recording may take from a few seconds to a few minutes. *Do not remove the memory card or remove or disconnect the power source until the access lamp has gone out.* If the camera is switched off while data remain in the buffer, the power will not turn off until all images in the buffer have been recorded. To turn the camera off without recording the images in the buffer, press the 🗑 button while turning the camera off (keep the 🗑 button pressed for at least one second after turning the camera off). If the battery is exhausted while images remain in the buffer, the shutter release will be disabled and the images transferred to the memory card.

The approximate time required to write the entire buffer to a 1 GB SanDisk SDCFX (Extreme III) card is as follows (ISO sensitivity set to ISO 100 equivalent, long exposure noise reduction off, and **Size priority** selected for **JPEG compression**):

Quality	Hi-speed crop: Off	Hi-speed crop: On
Uncompressed NEF (RAW)+JPEG Basic (Large)	35 s (16 frames)	40 s (28 frames)
Uncompressed NEF (RAW)	35 s (17 frames)	35 s (29 frames)
TIFF RGB (Large)	530 s (16 frames)	590 s (28 frames)
JPEG Fine (Large)	16 s (22 frames)	20 s (38 frames)

Buffer Size

The number of images that can be stored in the memory buffer at current settings is shown in the exposure-count displays in the viewfinder and top control panel while the shutter-release button is pressed.



d2—Maximum Shots (👁 197)

The maximum number of photographs that can be taken in a single burst can be limited to any amount between 1 and 60.

Image Quality and Size

Making Effective Use of Memory

Together, image quality and size determine how much space each photograph occupies on the memory card.

Image Quality

The D2Xs supports the following image quality options (listed in descending order by image quality and file size):

Option	Description
NEF (RAW) + JPEG fine	Two images are recorded, one NEF (RAW) image and one fine-quality JPEG image.
NEF (RAW) + JPEG normal	Two images are recorded, one NEF (RAW) image and one normal-quality JPEG image.
NEF (RAW) + JPEG basic	Two images are recorded, one NEF (RAW) image and one basic-quality JPEG image.
NEF (RAW)	Raw 12-bit data from the image sensor are saved directly to the memory card in **N**ikon **E**lectronic **F**ormat (NEF).
TIFF (RGB)	Record uncompressed TIFF-RGB images at a bit depth of 8 bits per channel (24-bit color). Time needed to record images increases.
JPEG fine	Record JPEG images at a compression ratio of roughly 1 : 4.
JPEG normal	Record JPEG images at a compression ratio of roughly 1 : 8.
JPEG basic	Record JPEG images at a compression ratio of roughly 1 : 16.

NEF (RAW)/NEF+JPEG

NEF (RAW) images can only be viewed using compatible software such as PictureProject or Capture NX (☞ 250). When photographs taken at **NEF (RAW) + JPEG fine**, **NEF (RAW) + JPEG normal**, or **NEF (RAW) + JPEG basic** are viewed on the camera, only the JPEG image will be displayed. When photographs taken at these settings are deleted, both NEF and JPEG images will be deleted.

White balance bracketing can not be used with NEF (RAW) images. Selecting an NEF (RAW) option for image quality cancels white balance bracketing.

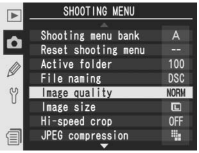
TIFF (RGB)

About 30 s are required to record a TIFF (RGB) image (1 GB SanDisk SDCFX (Extreme III) card; recording time varies with make of memory card).

Image quality can be set using the **Image quality** option in the shooting menu or by pressing the **QUAL** button and rotating the main command dial. Two options are available for controlling compression: **RAW compression** for NEF (RAW) images (48) and **JPEG compression** for JPEG images (47).

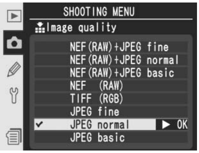
The Image Quality Menu

1 Highlight **Image quality** in the shooting menu (168) and press the multi selector to the right.



SHOOTING MENU
Shooting menu bank A
Reset shooting menu --
Active folder 100
File naming DSC
Image quality NORM
Image size
Hi-speed crop OFF
JPEG compression

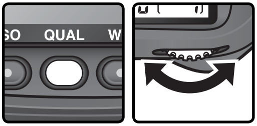
2 Highlight the desired option and press the multi selector to the right. The shooting menu will be displayed.



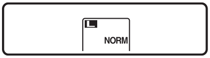
SHOOTING MENU
Image quality
NEF (RAW) +JPEG fine
NEF (RAW) +JPEG normal
NEF (RAW) +JPEG basic
NEF (RAW)
TIFF (RGB)
JPEG fine
✓ JPEG normal ▶ OK
JPEG basic

The **QUAL** *Button*

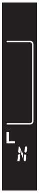
Press the **QUAL** button and rotate the main command dial (note that **RAW compression** and **JPEG compression** can only be adjusted from the shooting menu). Image quality is displayed in the rear control panel and viewfinder sidebar:



Option	Rear panel	Viewfinder
NEF (RAW) + JPEG fine	RAW+FINE	R F
NEF (RAW) + JPEG normal	RAW+ NORM	RN
NEF (RAW) + JPEG basic	RAW+ BASIC	R B
NEF (RAW)	RAW	R
TIFF (RGB)	TIFF	T
JPEG fine	FINE	F
JPEG normal	NORM	N
JPEG basic	BASIC	B



Rear control panel



Viewfinder

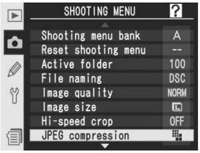
The JPEG Compression Menu

The JPEG compression menu offers the following options for JPEG images:

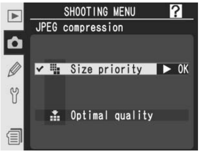
Option	Description
Size priority (default)	Images are compressed to produce relatively uniform file size. Quality varies with scene recorded.
Optimal quality	Optimal image quality. File size varies with scene recorded.

The effects of these options are most pronounced with large image sizes (48), high ISO sensitivity (52), complex scenes, image quality settings of **RAW+BASIC** or **BASIC**, or heavy sharpening (68). To choose an option:

1. Highlight **JPEG compression** in the shooting menu (168) and press the multi selector to the right.


SHOOTING MENU
Shooting menu bank A
Reset shooting menu --
Active folder 100
File naming DSC
Image quality NORM
Image size
Hi-speed crop OFF
JPEG compression

2. Highlight the desired option and press the multi selector to the right. The shooting menu will be displayed. The selected option takes effect whenever image quality is set to **NEF (RAW) + JPEG fine**, **NEF (RAW) + JPEG normal**, **NEF (RAW) + JPEG basic**, **JPEG fine**, **JPEG normal**, or **JPEG basic**.


SHOOTING MENU
JPEG compression
✓ Size priority ▶ OK
Optimal quality

File Names

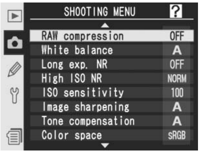
Photographs are stored as image files with names of the form "DSC_*nnnn*.*xxx*," where *nnnn* is a four-digit number between 0001 and 9999 assigned automatically in ascending order by the camera, and *xxx* is one of the following three letter extensions: "NEF" for NEF images, "TIF" for TIFF-RGB, "JPG" for JPEG images, and "NDF" for Dust Off ref photos (221–222). The NEF and JPEG files recorded at a setting of "NEF+JPEG" have the same file names but different extensions. Images recorded at a **Color space** setting of **Adobe RGB** (70) have names that begin with an underbar (e.g., "_DSC0001.JPG"). The "DSC" portion of the file name can be changed using the **File naming** option in the shooting menu (173).

The Raw Compression Menu

The following options are available for NEF (RAW) images:

Option	Description
NEF (RAW) (default)	NEF images are not compressed.
Comp. NEF (RAW)	NEF images are compressed, reducing file size by about 40–50% percent with almost no effect on image quality.

1 Highlight **RAW compression** in the shooting menu (👁 168) and press the multi selector to the right.


SHOOTING MENU
?
RAW compression OFF
White balance A
Long exp. NR OFF
High ISO NR NORM
ISO sensitivity 100
Image sharpening A
Tone compensation A
Color space sRGB

2 Highlight the desired option and press the multi selector to the right. The shooting menu will be displayed. The selected option takes effect whenever image quality is set to **NEF (RAW) + JPEG fine**, **NEF (RAW) + JPEG normal**, **NEF (RAW) + JPEG basic**, or **NEF (RAW)**.

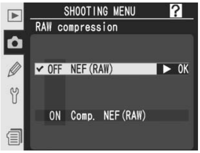

SHOOTING MENU
?
RAW compression
✓ OFF NEF (RAW)
▶ OK
ON Comp. NEF (RAW)

Image Size

Image size is measured in pixels. Smaller sizes produce smaller files, making them suited to distribution via e-mail or inclusion in web pages. Conversely, the larger the image, the larger the size at which it can be printed without becoming noticeably "grainy." Choose image size according to the space available on the memory card and the task at hand (note that image size varies depending on the setting selected for **Hi-speed crop**; 👁 41).

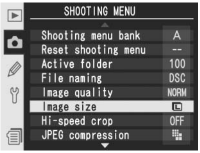
Option	Hi-speed crop: Off		Hi-speed crop: On	
	Size (pixels)	Print size (cm)*	Size (pixels)	Print size (cm)*
Large	4,288 × 2,848	54.5 × 36.2 (21″ × 14″)	3,216 × 2,136	40.8 × 27.1 (16″ × 11″)
Medium	3,216 × 2,136	40.8 × 27.1 (16″ × 11″)	2,400 × 1,600	30.5 × 20.3 (12″ × 8″)
Small	2,144 × 1,424	27.2 × 18.1 (11″ × 7″)	1,600 × 1,064	20.3 × 13.5 (8″ × 5″)

* Approximate size when printed at 200 dpi.

Image size can be set using the **Image size** option in the shooting menu or by pressing the **QUAL** button and rotating the sub-command dial. Note that the option selected does not affect the size of NEF (RAW) images. When opened software such as PictureProject or Capture NX, NEF images are 4,288 × 2,848 (high-speed crop off) or 3,216 × 2,136 (high-speed crop on) pixels in size.

The Image Size Menu

1 Highlight **Image size** in the shooting menu (👁 168) and press the multi selector to the right.


SHOOTING MENU

Shooting menu bank	A
Reset shooting menu	--
Active folder	100
File naming	DSC
Image quality	NORM
Image size	L
Hi-speed crop	OFF
JPEG compression	

2 Highlight the desired option and press the multi selector to the right (note that the pixel size listed will vary to reflect the option currently selected for **Hi-speed crop**). The shooting menu will be displayed.

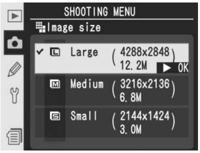
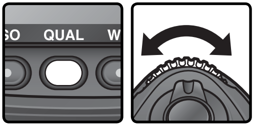

SHOOTING MENU

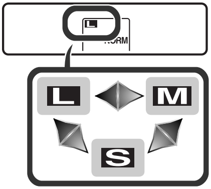
Image size

✓ L	Large	(4288x2848 12.2M) ▶ OK
M	Medium	(3216x2136 6.8M)
S	Small	(2144x1424 3.0M)

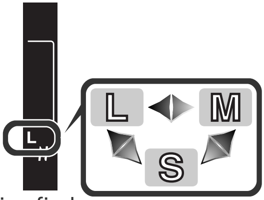
The **QUAL** *Button*

Image size can also be set by pressing the **QUAL** button and rotating the sub-command dial. Image size is displayed in the rear control panel and in the viewfinder sidebar:





Rear control panel



Viewfinder

Memory Card Capacity and Image Quality/Size

The following table shows the approximate number of pictures that can be stored on a 1 GB card at different image quality and size settings.

Image quality	Image size	Hi-speed crop: Off			Hi-speed crop: On		
		File size[1]	No. of images[1]	Buffer capacity[2]	File size[1]	No. of images[1]	Buffer capacity[2]
NEF + JPEG Fine[3, 4, 5]	L[6]	25.1 MB	36	16	14.2 MB	64	28
	M[6]	22.6 MB	41	16	12.8 MB	72	28
	S[6]	20.7 MB	45	16	11.8 MB	79	28
NEF + JPEG Normal[3, 4, 5]	L[6]	22.2 MB	41	16	12.6 MB	73	28
	M[6]	20.9 MB	44	16	11.9 MB	78	28
	S[6]	20.0 MB	47	16	11.4 MB	82	28
NEF + JPEG Basic[3, 4, 5]	L[6]	20.7 MB	45	16	11.8 MB	79	28
	M[6]	20.1 MB	47	16	11.4 MB	82	28
	S[6]	19.6 MB	48	16	11.2 MB	84	28
NEF (RAW)[4]	—	19.2 MB	49	17	10.9MB	86	29
TIFF (RGB)	L	36.5 MB	26	16	20.5 MB	46	28
	M	21.2 MB	46	16	11.9 MB	83	28
	S	10.3 MB	104	16	5.8MB	183	28
JPEG Fine[5]	L	5.9 MB	138	22	3.3 MB	244	38
	M	3.3 MB	244	22	1.9 MB	433	38
	S	1.5 MB	538	22	0.84 MB	919	38
JPEG Normal[5]	L	2.9 MB	274	22	1.7 MB	473	38
	M	1.7 MB	473	22	0.95 MB	822	38
	S	0.76 MB	1000	22	0.44 MB	1700	38
JPEG Basic[5]	L	1.5 MB	538	22	0.85 MB	919	38
	M	0.85 MB	919	22	0.49 MB	1500	38
	S	0.39 MB	1900	22	0.23 MB	3100	38

[1] All figures are approximate. Size of JPEG files varies with scene recorded.

[2] Maximum number of frames that can be stored in memory buffer. Drops when **Long Exp. NR** is on, when ISO sensitivity is set to **HI-0.3** or higher, or when **High ISO NR** is on and Custom Setting b1 (**ISO auto**) is on or ISO sensitivity is ISO 400 or higher.

[3] Total for NEF and JPEG images.

[4] Figures assume **RAW compression** is set to **NEF (RAW)**. Selecting **Comp. NEF (RAW)** decreases file size of NEF (RAW) images by approximately forty to fifty percent; although number of exposures remaining does not change, number of images that can be recorded increases.

[5] Figures assume **JPEG compression** is set to **Size priority**. Selecting **Optimal quality** increases file size of JPEG images by up to eighty percent; number of images and buffer capacity drop accordingly.

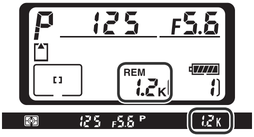
[6] Applies to JPEG images only. File size of NEF (RAW) images can not be changed.

Number of Exposures Remaining

The number of exposures remaining shown in the exposure count displays in the control panel and viewfinder is only an approximation. The number of compressed NEF or JPEG images that can be stored on a memory card depends on the subject and composition of each photograph. In general, the more detailed the image, the larger the resulting file and the fewer the images that can be stored.

Large-Capacity Memory Cards

When enough memory remains on the memory card to record a thousand or more pictures at current settings, the number of exposures remaining will be shown in thousands, rounded down to the nearest hundred (e.g., if there is room for approximately 1,260 exposures, the exposure count display will show 1.2 K).



d2—Maximum Shots (👁 197)

The maximum number of photographs that can be taken in a single burst can be limited to any amount between 1 and 60.

ISO Sensitivity

Reacting Faster to Light

"ISO sensitivity" is the digital equivalent of film speed. The higher the ISO sensitivity, the less light needed to make an exposure, allowing higher shutter speeds or smaller apertures.

ISO sensitivity can be set between values roughly equivalent to ISO 100 and ISO 800 in steps equivalent to ⅓ EV. Settings over ISO 800 are available where high sensitivity is a priority:

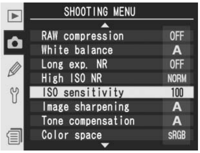
EV steps over ISO 800	ISO equivalent	Control panel display	Viewfinder display
Approximately ⅓ *	1000	H 0.3	Ho3
Approximately ½ †	1100	H 0.5	Ho5
Approximately ⅔ *	1250	H 0.7	Ho7
Approximately 1	1600	H 1	H 1
Approximately 2	3200	H 2	H 2

* Available only when **1/3 step** is selected for Custom Setting b2 (**ISO step value**).
† Available only when **1/2 step** is selected for Custom Setting b2 (**ISO step value**).

ISO sensitivity can be adjusted using the **ISO sensitivity** option in the shooting menu or by pressing the **ISO** button and rotating the main command dial.

The ISO Menu

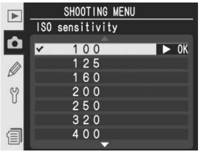
1 Highlight **ISO sensitivity** in the shooting menu (📖 168) and press the multi selector to the right.



SHOOTING MENU

RAW compression	OFF
White balance	A
Long exp. NR	OFF
High ISO NR	NORM
ISO sensitivity	100
Image sharpening	A
Tone compensation	A
Color space	sRGB

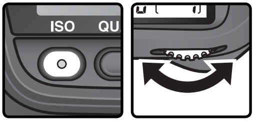
2 Highlight the desired option and press the multi selector to the right. The shooting menu will be displayed.

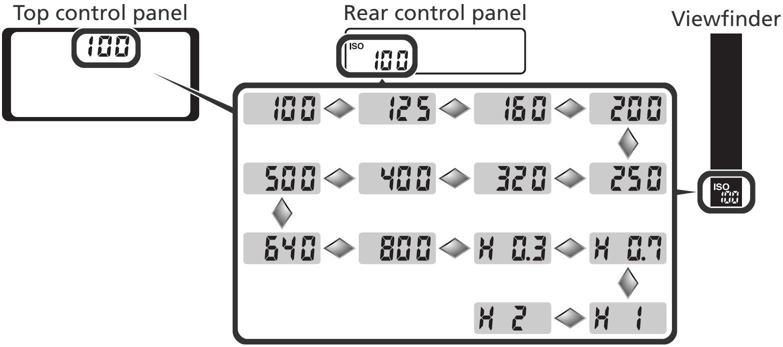


SHOOTING MENU
ISO sensitivity
✓ 100 ▶ OK
125
160
200
250
320
400

The **ISO** *Button*

ISO sensitivity can also be set by pressing the **ISO** button and rotating the main command dial. ISO sensitivity is displayed in the control panels and viewfinder sidebar:




Top control panel
Rear control panel
Viewfinder
ISO
100
125
160
200
250
320
400
500
640
800
H 0.3
H 0.7
H 1
H 2

Noise

The higher the ISO sensitivity, the more likely pictures are to be subject to "noise" in the form of randomly-spaced, brightly-colored pixels. Photos taken at settings over ISO 800 will likely contain appreciable amounts of noise.

High ISO NR (👁 176)

This option can be used to reduce noise at ISO sensitivities of ISO 400 or more (this reduces the capacity of the memory buffer). Note that although noise reduction is always in effect at ISO sensitivities over ISO 800, selecting **On** for **High ISO NR** will increase the amount of noise reduction performed.

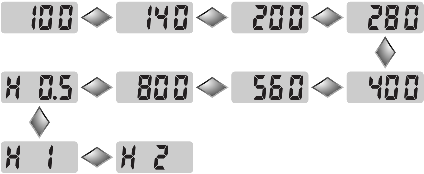
b1—ISO Auto (👁 191)

When **On** is selected for Custom Setting b1 (**ISO auto**), the camera will automatically vary ISO sensitivity from the value selected by the user to help ensure optimum exposure. ISO sensitivity can not be set to values over ISO 800 while **ISO auto** is on, and **On** can not be selected for **ISO auto** is when ISO is set to a value over ISO 800.

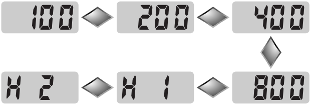
b2—ISO Step Value (👁 192)

Depending on the option selected for Custom Setting b2, ISO sensitivity can also be set in increments equivalent to ½ or 1 EV.

ISO step value set to **1/2 step**



ISO step value set to **1 step**



If possible, the current ISO sensitivity setting is maintained when the step value is changed. If the current ISO sensitivity setting is not available at the new step value, ISO sensitivity will be rounded up to the nearest available setting.

d5—Cntrl Panel/Finder>Rear Control Panel (👁 199)

If **Exposures remaining** is selected for **Cntrl panel/finder**>**Rear control panel** (Custom Setting d5), ISO sensitivity will only be displayed in the rear control panel while the **ISO** button is pressed. If **ISO sensitivity** is selected, ISO sensitivity will be displayed except during voice memo recording and playback.

White Balance

Keeping Colors True

The color of light reflected from an object varies with the color of the light source. The human brain is able to adapt to changes in the color of the light source, with the result that white objects appear white whether seen in the shade, direct sunlight, or under incandescent lighting. Unlike the film used in film cameras, digital cameras can mimic this adjustment by processing images according to the color of the light source. This is known as "white balance." For natural coloration, choose a white balance setting that matches the light source before shooting. The following options are available:

Option		Approximate color temperature*	Description
A	**Auto**	3,500–8,000 K	White balance adjusted automatically using color temperature measured by 1,005-pixel RGB sensor, image sensor, and ambient light sensor. For best results, use type G or D lens. With SB-800 or SB-600 Speedlight, white balance reflects conditions in effect when Speedlight fires.
💡	**Incandescent**	3,000 K	Use under incandescent lighting.
	Fluorescent	4,200 K	Use under fluorescent lighting.
☀	**Direct sunlight**	5,200 K	Use with subjects lit by direct sunlight.
ϟ	**Flash**	5,400 K	Use with Nikon Speedlights.
☁	**Cloudy**	6,000 K	Use in daylight under overcast skies.
⌂	**Shade**	8,000 K	Use in daylight with subjects in the shade.
K	**Choose color temp.**	2,500–10,000 K	Choose color temperature from list of values (👁 59).
PRE	**White balance preset**	—	Use subject, light source, or existing photograph as reference for white balance (👁 60).

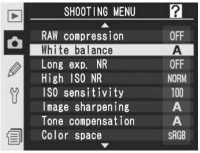
* Fine-tuning set to 0.

Auto white balance is recommended with most light sources. If the desired results can not be achieved with auto white balance, choose an option from the list above or use preset white balance.

White balance can be set using the **White balance** option in the shooting menu or by pressing the **WB** button and rotating the main command dial.

The White Balance Menu

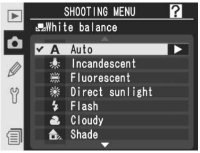
1 Highlight **White balance** in the shooting menu (👁 168) and press the multi selector to the right.



SHOOTING MENU

RAW compression OFF
White balance A
Long exp. NR OFF
High ISO NR NORM
ISO sensitivity 100
Image sharpening A
Tone compensation A
Color space sRGB

2 Highlight the desired option and press the multi selector to the right. Selecting **Choose color temp.** displays a menu of color temperatures (👁 59), **White balance preset** a preset white balance menu (👁 60), other options a fine-tuning dialog (👁 57).

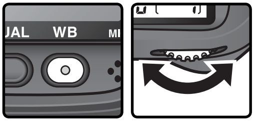


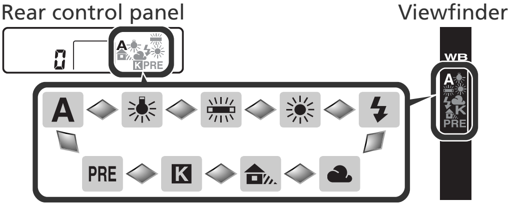
SHOOTING MENU
White balance

✓ A Auto ▶
Incandescent
Fluorescent
Direct sunlight
Flash
Cloudy
Shade

The **WB** *Button*

White balance can also be set by pressing the **WB** button and rotating the main command dial. White balance is displayed in the rear control panel and viewfinder sidebar:





Studio Strobe Lighting

Auto white balance may not produce the desired results with studio strobe lighting. Choose a color temperature, use preset white balance, or set white balance to **Flash** and use fine tuning to adjust white balance.

e5—Auto BKT Set (👁 203)

When **WB bracketing** is selected for custom setting e5 (**Auto BKT set**), the camera will create several images each time the shutter is released. White balance will be varied with each image, “bracketing” the value currently selected for white balance.

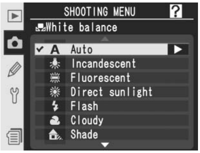
Fine-Tuning White Balance

At settings other than K (**Choose color temp.**) and **PRE** (preset), white balance can be "fine tuned" to compensate for variations in the color of the light source or to introduce a deliberate "warm" or "cold" cast into an image. Higher settings can be used to lend images a bluish tinge or to compensate for light sources with a yellow or red cast, while lowering white balance can make photographs appear slightly more yellow or red or compensate for light sources with a blue cast. Adjustments can be made in the range +3 to –3 in increments of one. Except in **Fluorescent** mode, each increment is equivalent to about 10 mired.

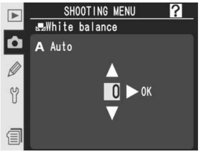
White balance is fine tuned using the **White balance** option in the shooting menu or by pressing the **WB** button and rotating the sub-command dial.

The White Balance Menu

1. In the white balance menu (👁 55), highlight an option other than **Choose color temp.** or **White balance preset** and press the multi selector to the right.



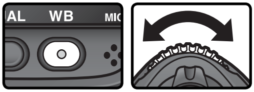
2. Press the multi selector up or down to choose the desired value and press the multi selector to the right. The shooting menu will be displayed.



Color Temperature

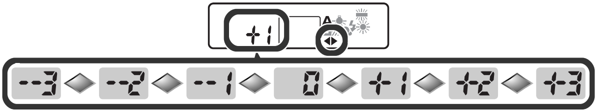
The perceived color of a light source varies with the viewer and other conditions. Color temperature is an objective measure of the color of a light source, defined with reference to the temperature to which an object would have to be heated to radiate light in the same wavelengths. While light sources with a color temperature in the neighborhood of 5,000–5,500 K appear white, light sources with a lower color temperature, such as incandescent light bulbs, appear slightly yellow or red. Light sources with a higher color temperature appear tinged with blue.

The **WB** *Button*

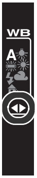


Press the **WB** button and rotate the sub-command dial until the desired value is displayed in the rear control panel. At settings other than ±0, a ◀▶ icon appears in the rear control panel and viewfinder sidebar.

Rear control panel



Viewfinder



Fine-Tuning and Color Temperature

Approximate color-temperatures for settings other than **A** (auto) are given below (values may differ from color temperatures given by photo color meters):

	Incandescent	Fluorescent*	Direct sunlight	Flash	Cloudy (daylight)	Shade (daylight)
+3	2,700 K	2,700 K	4,800 K	4,800 K	5,400 K	6,700 K
+2	2,800 K	3,000 K	4,900 K	5,000 K	5,600 K	7,100 K
+1	2,900 K	3,700 K	5,000 K	5,200 K	5,800 K	7,500 K
±0	3,000 K	4,200 K	5,200 K	5,400 K	6,000 K	8,000 K
–1	3,100 K	5,000 K	5,300 K	5,600 K	6,200 K	8,400 K
–2	3,200 K	6,500 K	5,400 K	5,800 K	6,400 K	8,800 K
–3	3,300 K	7,200 K	5,600 K	6,000 K	6,600 K	9,200 K

* The size of the increments for **Fluorescent** reflects the wide variations in color temperature among the many different types of fluorescent light source, ranging from low-temperature stadium lighting to high-temperature mercury-vapor lamps.

"Mired"

Any given change in color temperature produces a greater difference in color at low color temperatures than it would at higher color temperatures. For example, a change of 1000 K produces a much greater change in color at 3000 K than at 6000 K. Mired, calculated by multiplying the inverse of the color temperature by 10^6, is a measure of color temperature that takes such variation into account, and as such is the unit used in color-temperature compensation filters. E.g.:

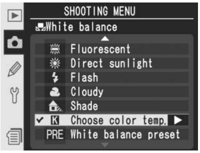
- 4000 K – 3000 K (a difference of 1000 K) = 83 mired
- 7000 K – 6000 K (a difference of 1000 K) = 24 mired

Choosing a Color Temperature

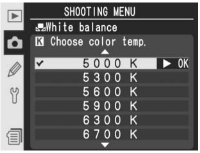
Choose a setting of K (**Choose color temp.**) to select the color temperature from thirty-one predetermined values ranging from 2,500 K to 10,000 K in increments of roughly 10 mired (note that the desired results will not be obtained with flash or fluorescent lighting). Color temperature can be selected in the white-balance menu or with the **WB** button and sub-command dial.

The White Balance Menu

1. In the white balance menu (☞ 55), highlight an **Choose color temp.** and press the multi selector to the right.

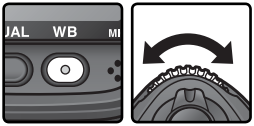

SHOOTING MENU
White balance
Fluorescent
Direct sunlight
Flash
Cloudy
Shade
✓ K Choose color temp. ▶
PRE White balance preset

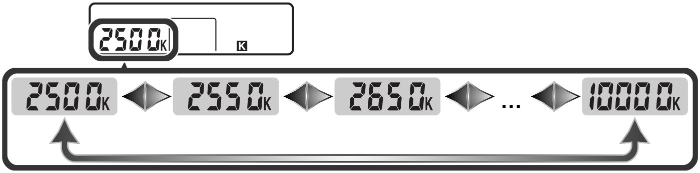
2. Highlight the desired color temperature and press the multi selector to the right. The shooting menu will be displayed.


SHOOTING MENU
White balance
K Choose color temp.
✓ 5000 K ▶ OK
5300 K
5600 K
5900 K
6300 K
6700 K

The **WB** *Button*

At a setting of K (**Choose color temp.**), color temperature can be selected by pressing the **WB** button and rotating the sub-command dial. The color temperature is displayed in the rear control panel:




2500K
K
2500K
2550K
2650K
…
10000K

Take Test Shots

Take a test shot to determine if the selected value is appropriate to the light source.

Preset White Balance

Preset white balance is used to record and recall custom white balance settings for shooting under mixed lighting or to compensate for light sources with a strong color cast. Four options are available for setting preset white balance:

Recording New Values with the Camera

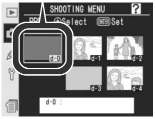
(1) Frame a neutral gray or white object and press the shutter-release button to measure a value for white balance (👁 61).
(2) Measure white balance with the ambient light sensor (👁 61).

Copying Values from Existing Photographs

(3) Copy white balance from another image on the memory card (👁 66).

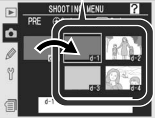
The camera can store up to five values for preset white balance in presets d-0–d-4. White balance values recorded with options (1) and (2) are stored in preset d-0. To prevent this value from being replaced the next time white balance is measured, the value stored in d-0 can be copied to presets d-1–d-4 for long-term storage (👁 67). White balance values copied using option (3) are also stored in presets d-1–d-4. A descriptive comment can be added to any white balance preset (👁 65).

d-0

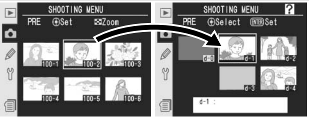

SHOOTING MENU
PRE
Select
ENTER Set
d-0
d-1
d-2
d-3
d-4
d-0 :

Stores last value measured for white balance (👁 61).

d-1 – d-4


SHOOTING MENU
PRE
d-1
d-2
d-3
d-4

Store values copied from d-0 (👁 67).


SHOOTING MENU
PRE
Set
Zoom
100-1
100-2
100-3
100-4
100-5
100-6
SHOOTING MENU
PRE
Select
ENTER Set
d-0
d-1
d-2
d-3
d-4
d-1 :

Store values copied from images on memory card (👁 66).

White Balance Presets

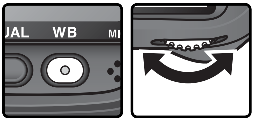
Changes to white balance presets apply to all shooting menu banks (👁 169). A confirmation dialog will be displayed if the user attempts to change a white balance preset created in another shooting menu bank (no warning is displayed for preset d-0).

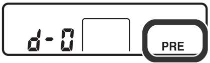
Measuring a Value for White Balance

White balance can be measured with reference to a neutral gray object or by measuring the color of the light source. The new value for white balance is automatically stored in preset d-0.

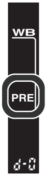
Reference	Description
Neutral gray object	A standard gray card or other neutral gray or white object is placed under lighting that will be used in final photograph and white balance is measured using both 1,005-pixel RGB sensor and main image sensor. Use for flash photography or when the subject and camera are under different lighting.
Light source	Color of light source is measured by sensor on camera pentaprism and white balance adjusted to produce natural coloration without reference object. Use when subject is under same lighting as camera.

1 Press the **WB** button and rotate the main command dial until **PRE** is displayed in the rear control panel or viewfinder sidebar.





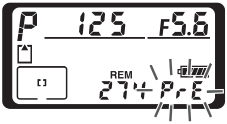
Rear control panel



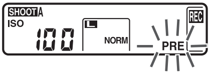
Viewfinder

If the new value for preset white balance will be used immediately, select preset d-0 by pressing the **WB** button and rotating the sub-command dial until d-0 is displayed in the rear control panel (👁 64). Otherwise there is no need to select d-0 when measuring a new value for white balance.

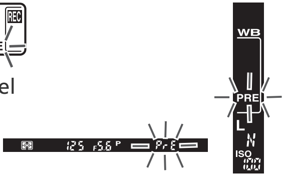
2 Release the **WB** button briefly and then press the button until the **PRE** icon in the rear control panel and viewfinder sidebar start to flash. A blinking Pr-E will also appear in the top control panel and viewfinder frame-count displays.



Top control panel



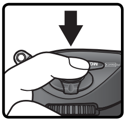
Rear control panel



Viewfinder

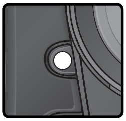
3 **To measure white balance using a neutral gray or white object…**

…frame the reference object so that it fills the viewfinder and press the shutter-release button all the way down. The camera will measure a value for white balance and store it in preset d-0. No photograph will be recorded; white balance can be measured accurately even when the camera is not in focus.



To measure the color of the light source…

…make sure that the ambient light sensor is lit by the light source and press the FUNC. button. The camera will calculate a value for white balance and store it in preset d-0.

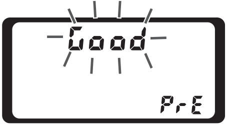


To exit without measuring a new value for white balance, press the **WB** button.

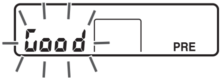
Exposure Mode

Preset white balance can be measured in all exposure modes. When using a reference object to set white balance, do not alter exposure from the value suggested by the camera.

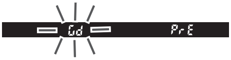
4 If the camera was able to measure a value for white balance, Good will flash for about three seconds in the control panels, while the viewfinder will show a flashing Gd.



Top control panel

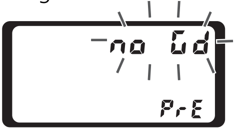


Rear control panel

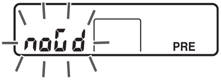


Viewfinder

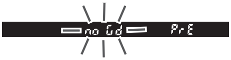
If lighting is too dark or too bright, or if some types of artificial lighting are used when measuring white balance using the ambient light sensor, the camera may be unable to measure white balance. A flashing noGd will appear in the control panels and viewfinder for about three seconds. Return to Step 3 and measure white balance again. If the camera is unable to measure white balance using the ambient light sensor, try measuring white balance using a neutral gray or white reference object.



Top control panel

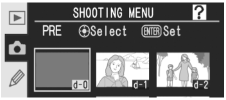


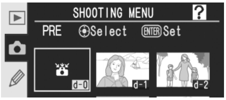
Rear control panel



Viewfinder

The new value for white balance will be stored in preset d-0, automatically replacing the previous value for this preset (no confirmation dialog will be displayed). If white balance was set using a reference object, a thumbnail will be displayed in the preset white balance list. Presets measured using the ambient light sensor are marked by a 📷 icon.



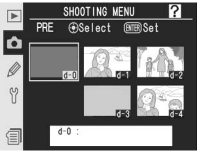


To use the new value for white balance, select preset d-0 (if no value has been measured for white balance before d-0 is selected, white balance will be set to a color temperature of 5,200 K, the same as **Direct sunlight**). The new white balance value will remain in preset d-0 until white balance is measured again. By copying preset d-0 to one of the other presets before measuring a new value for white balance, up to five white balance values can be stored (☞ 67).

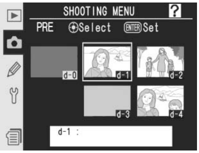
Selecting a White Balance Preset

To set white balance to a preset value:

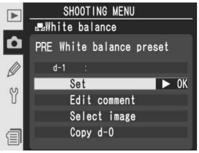
1 Highlight **White balance preset** in the white balance menu (📖 55) and press the multi selector to the right. The menu shown at right will be displayed. (To return to the shooting menu, press the MENU button.)


SHOOTING MENU
?
PRE ⊕Select ENTER Set
d-0
d-1
d-2
d-3
d-4
d-0 :

2 Presets are identified by an icon or thumbnail, a name (d-0 – d-4), and a comment. Press the multi selector up, down, left, or right to highlight the desired preset. To select the highlighted preset and return to shooting mode without completing steps 3–5, press the ENTER button.

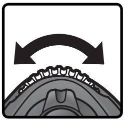

SHOOTING MENU
?
PRE ⊕Select ENTER Set
d-0
d-1
d-2
d-3
d-4
d-1 :

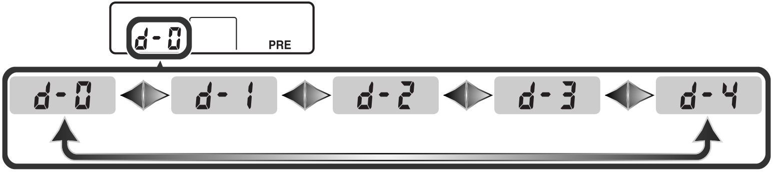
3 Press the center of the multi selector to display the menu shown at right. To view options for other presets, highlight the name of the current preset (d-0 – d-4) and press the multi selector right.


SHOOTING MENU
White balance
PRE White balance preset
d-1 :
Set ▶ OK
Edit comment
Select image
Copy d-0

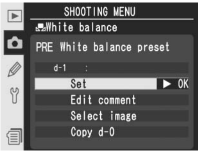
Selecting a White Balance Preset: the WB Button

At a setting of PRE (**White balance preset**), presets can also be selected by pressing the **WB** button and rotating the sub-command dial. The current preset is displayed in the rear control panel while the **WB** button is pressed.

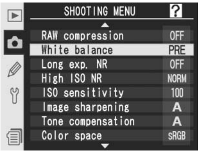



d-0
PRE
d-0
d-1
d-2
d-3
d-4

4 Press the multi selector up or down to highlight **Set**.


SHOOTING MENU
White balance
PRE White balance preset
d-1 :
Set ▶ OK
Edit comment
Select image
Copy d-0

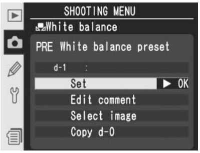
5 Press the multi selector to the right to set white balance to the value stored in the selected preset and return to the shooting menu.


SHOOTING MENU ?

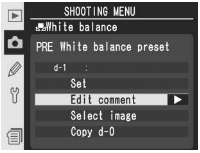
RAW compression OFF
White balance PRE
Long exp. NR OFF
High ISO NR NORM
ISO sensitivity 100
Image sharpening A
Tone compensation A
Color space sRGB

Entering a Comment

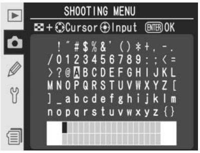
To enter a descriptive comment of up to thirty-six characters for a selected white balance preset, highlight the preset in the thumbnail display and press the center of the multi selector as described in steps 1–3 on the previous page. The menu shown at right will be displayed.


SHOOTING MENU
White balance
PRE White balance preset
d-1 :
Set ▶ OK
Edit comment
Select image
Copy d-0

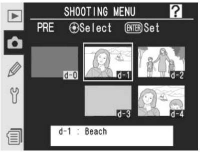
1 Press the multi selector up or down to highlight **Edit comment**.


SHOOTING MENU
White balance
PRE White balance preset
d-1 :
Set
Edit comment ▶
Select image
Copy d-0

2 Press the multi selector to the right to display the text edit dialog. Edit the comment as described on page 217.


SHOOTING MENU
+ Cursor Input ENTER OK
! " # $ % & ' ( ) * + , - .
/ 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 : ; < =
> ? @ A B C D E F G H I J K L
M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z [
] _ a b c d e f g h i j k l m
n o p q r s t u v w x y z { }

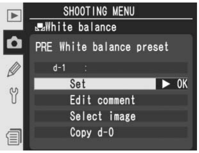
3 Press the ENTER button to return to the thumbnail display.


SHOOTING MENU ?
PRE Select ENTER Set
d-0
d-1
d-2
d-3
d-4

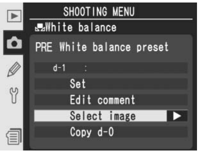
d-1 : Beach

Copying White Balance from a Photograph (d-1 – d-4 Only)

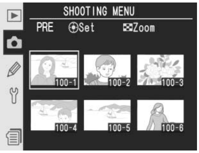
To copy a value for white balance from a photograph on the memory card to a selected preset (d-1 – d-4 only), highlight the preset in the thumbnail display and press the center of the multi selector as described in steps 1–3 on page 64. The menu shown at right will be displayed.


SHOOTING MENU
White balance
PRE White balance preset
d-1 :
Set ▶ OK
Edit comment
Select image
Copy d-0

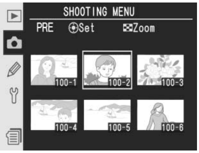
1 Press the multi selector up or down to highlight **Select image**.


SHOOTING MENU
White balance
PRE White balance preset
d-1 :
Set
Edit comment
Select image ▶
Copy d-0

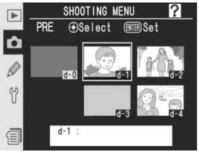
2 Press the multi selector to the right to display the photographs on the memory card. Only photographs taken with the D2Xs will be displayed; other images can not be selected.


SHOOTING MENU
PRE Set Zoom
100-1
100-2
100-3
100-4
100-5
100-6

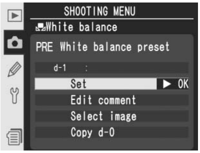
3 Press the multi selector up, down, left, or right to highlight the desired image. To view the highlighted image full frame, press the ⊞ button. Press the ⊞ button again to return to the thumbnail list.


SHOOTING MENU
PRE Set Zoom
100-1
100-2
100-3
100-4
100-5
100-6

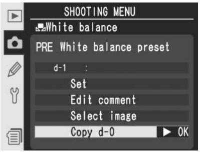
4 Press the center of the multi selector to copy the white balance value for the highlighted photograph to the selected preset and return to the thumbnail display. If the highlighted photograph has a comment, the comment will be copied to the comment for the selected preset.


SHOOTING MENU ?
PRE Select ENTER Set
d-0
d-1
d-2
d-3
d-4
d-1 :

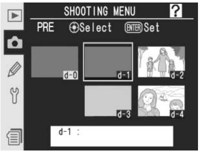
Copying White Balance from d-0 to Presets d-1 – d-4


SHOOTING MENU
White balance
PRE White balance preset
d-1 :
Set ▶ OK
Edit comment
Select image
Copy d-0

To copy a measured value for white balance from d-0 to any of the other presets (d-1 – d-4), highlight the destination preset in the thumbnail display and press the center of the multi selector as described in steps 1–3 on page 64. The menu shown at right will be displayed.


SHOOTING MENU
White balance
PRE White balance preset
d-1 :
Set
Edit comment
Select image
Copy d-0 ▶ OK

1 Press the multi selector up or down to highlight **Copy d-0**.


SHOOTING MENU
?
PRE Select ENTER Set
d-0
d-1
d-2
d-3
d-4
d-1 :

2 Press the multi selector to the right to copy white balance from d-0 to the selected preset and return to the thumbnail display. If comment has been created for d-0, the comment will be copied to the comment for the selected preset.

Image Adjustment

Shooting Menu Settings

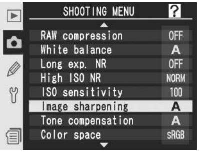
This section describes settings that can only be adjusted from the shooting menu (☞ 168).

Making Edges More Distinct: *Image Sharpening*

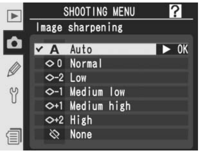
When a photograph is taken, the camera automatically processes the image to increase the distinction between light and dark areas, making the picture appear sharper. The **Image sharpening** menu controls the amount of sharpening performed.

Option		Description
A	**Auto** (default)	The camera automatically adjusts sharpening according to the subject and how other camera settings are adjusted. Amount of sharpening varies from shot to shot, even in scenes of same type; to take multiple shots with same sharpening, choose different setting. For best results, use a type G or D lens.
◇0	**Normal**	Camera sharpens all images the same standard amount.
◇–2	**Low**	Images are sharpened less than the standard amount.
◇–1	**Medium low**	Images are sharpened slightly less than the standard amount.
◇+1	**Medium high**	Images are sharpened slightly more than the standard amount.
◇+2	**High**	Images are sharpened more than the standard amount.
⊘	**None**	Images are not sharpened.

1 Highlight **Image sharpening** in the shooting menu (☞ 168) and press the multi selector to the right.


SHOOTING MENU
RAW compression OFF
White balance A
Long exp. NR OFF
High ISO NR NORM
ISO sensitivity 100
Image sharpening A
Tone compensation A
Color space SRGB

2 Highlight the desired option and press the multi selector to the right. The shooting menu will be displayed.

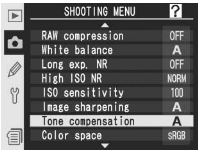

SHOOTING MENU
Image sharpening
✓ A Auto ▶ OK
◇0 Normal
◇-2 Low
◇-1 Medium low
◇+1 Medium high
◇+2 High
⊘ None

Adjusting Contrast: *Tone Compensation*

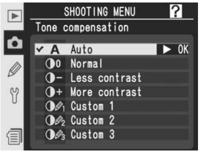
As photographs are saved to the memory card, they are processed to adjust the distribution of tones in the image, enhancing contrast. Tone compensation is performed by means of tone curves that define the relationship between the distribution of tones in the original image and the compensated result. The **Tone compensation** menu controls the type of curve used.

Option		Description
A	**Auto** (default)	Camera automatically optimizes contrast by selecting the appropriate curve. Curve varies from shot to shot, even in scenes of same type; to take multiple shots with same curve, choose different setting. For best results, use a type G or D lens.
◑0	**Normal**	Camera uses same standard curve for all images. Suited to most scenes, whether dark or bright.
◑–	**Less contrast**	Produces "softer" images. Prevents highlights on portrait subjects from being "washed out" in direct sunlight.
◑+	**More contrast**	Choose this curve to preserve detail in misty landscapes and other low-contrast subjects.
◑✎	**Custom**	Camera Control Pro (available separately) can be used to download up to three custom tone curves to the camera. Choose **Custom** to select a user-defined curve (👁 72). If no custom curve has been created, this option is equivalent to **Normal**.

1 Highlight **Tone compensation** in the shooting menu (👁 168) and press the multi selector to the right.


SHOOTING MENU
RAW compression OFF
White balance A
Long exp. NR OFF
High ISO NR NORM
ISO sensitivity 100
Image sharpening A
Tone compensation A
Color space sRGB

2 Highlight the desired option and press the multi selector to the right. If **Custom** is selected, a menu of custom tone curves will be displayed (👁 72). Otherwise, the shooting menu will be displayed.

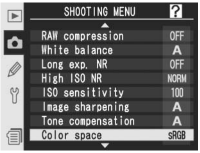

SHOOTING MENU
Tone compensation
✓ A Auto ▶ OK
◑0 Normal
◑– Less contrast
◑+ More contrast
◑✎1 Custom 1
◑✎2 Custom 2
◑✎3 Custom 3

Suiting Colors to a Workflow: *Color Space*

The color space determines the gamut of colors available for color reproduction. Choose a color space according to how photographs will be processed on leaving the camera.

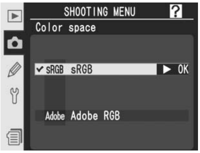
Option		Description
sRGB	**sRGB** (default)	Choose for photographs that will be printed or used "as is," with no further modification. Color mode II is not available (👁 72).
Adobe	**AdobeRGB**	This color space is capable of expressing a wider gamut of colors than sRGB, making it the preferred choice for images that will be extensively processed or retouched. **Black-and-white (sRGB)** is not available for **Color mode** when this option is in effect.

1. Highlight **Color space** in the shooting menu (👁 168) and press the multi selector to the right.



SHOOTING MENU
RAW compression OFF
White balance A
Long exp. NR OFF
High ISO NR NORM
ISO sensitivity 100
Image sharpening A
Tone compensation A
Color space sRGB

2. Highlight the desired option and press the multi selector to the right. The shooting menu will be displayed.



SHOOTING MENU
Color space
✓ sRGB sRGB ▶ OK
Adobe Adobe RGB

Color Space

sRGB is recommended when taking photographs that will be printed without modification or viewed in applications that do not support color management, or when taking photographs that will be printed with ExifPrint, the direct printing option on some household printers, or kiosk printing or other commercial print services. Adobe RGB photographs can also be printed using these options, but colors will not be as vivid.

JPEG photographs taken in the Adobe RGB color space are Exif 2.21 and DCF 2.0 compliant; applications and printers that support Exif 2.21 and DCF 2.0 will select the correct color space automatically. If the application or device does not support Exif 2.21 and DCF 2.0, select the appropriate color space manually. An ICC color profile is embedded in TIFF photographs taken in the Adobe RGB color space, allowing applications that support color management to automatically select the correct color space. For more information, see the documentation provided with the application or device.

Nikon Software

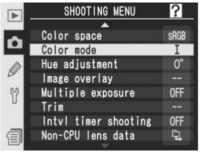
Capture NX (available separately) and PictureProject automatically select the correct color space when opening photographs created with the D2Xs.

Matching Colors to the Subject: *Color Mode*

Much as film cameras offer a choice of films for different subjects, the D2Xs offers a choice of color modes with subtly different palettes.

Option	Description
I (default)	Choose for portrait shots.
II	Choose for photographs that will be extensively processed or retouched. This option is available only when **AdobeRGB** is selected for **Color space**.
III	Choose for nature or landscape shots.
Black-and-white (sRGB)	Take pictures in black-and-white with a wide tone range suited a wide variety of subjects, from portraits to landscapes. This option is only available when **sRGB** is selected for **Color Space**.

1 Highlight **Color mode** in the shooting menu (168) and press the multi selector to the right.



SHOOTING MENU

Color space sRGB

Color mode I

Hue adjustment 0°

Image overlay --

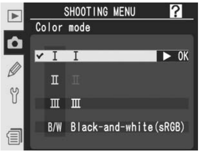
Multiple exposure OFF

Trim --

Intvl timer shooting OFF

Non-CPU lens data

2 Highlight the desired option and press the multi selector to the right. The shooting menu will be displayed.



SHOOTING MENU

Color mode

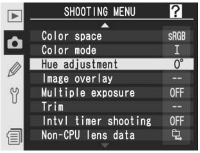
Color Space and Color Mode

If **sRGB** is chosen for **Color space** when **Color mode** is set to Mode **II**, **Color mode** will be reset to the mode in effect when **sRGB** was last selected. Selecting **Adobe RGB** for **Color space** when **Black-and-white (sRGB)** is selected for **Color mode** sets **Color mode** to **II**.

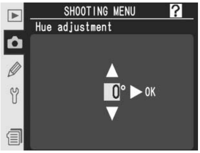
Controlling Color: *Hue Adjustment*

Hue can be adjusted in the range about –9° to +9° in increments of 3°. If red is taken as the starting color, raising hue above 0° (the default setting) would introduce a yellow cast, making colors that would be red at a setting of 0° appear increasingly orange. Lowering hue below 0° would introduce a blue cast, making colors that would be red at a setting of 0° appear increasingly purple.

1 Highlight **Hue adjustment** in the shooting menu (👁 168) and press the multi selector to the right.


SHOOTING MENU
?
Color space sRGB
Color mode I
Hue adjustment 0°
Image overlay --
Multiple exposure OFF
Trim --
Intvl timer shooting OFF
Non-CPU lens data

2 Highlight the desired option and press the multi selector to the right. The shooting menu will be displayed.


SHOOTING MENU
?
Hue adjustment
0°
OK

Hue

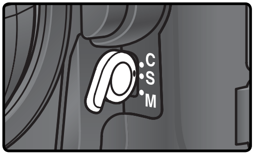
The RGB color model used in digital photographs reproduces colors using differing amounts of red, green, and blue light. By mixing two colors of light, a variety of different colors can be produced. For example, red combined with a small amount of green light produces orange. If red and green are mixed in equal amounts, yellow results, while a smaller amount of red produces a yellow green. Mixing different amounts of red and blue light produces colors ranging from a reddish purple through purple to navy, while mixing different amounts of green and blue light produces colors ranging from emerald to turquoise. (Adding a third color of light results in lighter hues; if all three mixed in equal amounts, the results range from white through gray.) When this progression of hues is arranged in a circle, the result is known as a color wheel.

Focus

Controlling How the Camera Focuses

This section describes the options that control how your camera focuses: focus mode, focus-area selection, and AF-area mode.

Focus Mode



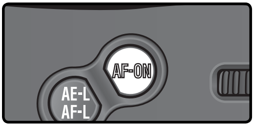
Focus mode is controlled by the focus mode selector on the front of the camera. There are two *autofocus* (AF) modes, in which the camera focuses automatically when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway, and one *manual* focus mode, in which focus must be adjusted manually using the focusing ring on the lens:

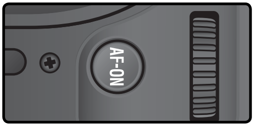
Option	Description
S Single-servo AF	Camera focuses when shutter-release button is pressed halfway. Focus locks when in-focus indicator (●) appears in viewfinder, and remains locked while shutter-release button is pressed halfway (*focus lock*).
C Continuous-servo AF	Camera focuses continuously while shutter-release button is pressed halfway. If subject moves, camera will engage *predictive focus tracking* to predict final distance to subject and adjust focus as necessary. At default settings, shutter can be released whether or not subject is in focus (*release priority*).
M Manual	Camera does not focus automatically; focus must be adjusted manually using the lens focusing ring. If maximum aperture of lens is f/5.6 or faster, viewfinder focus indicator can be used to confirm focus (*electronic range finding*), but photographs can be taken at any time, whether or not camera is in focus.

Choose single-servo AF for landscapes and other stationary subjects. Continuous-servo AF may be a better choice with erratically-moving subjects. Manual focus is recommended when the camera is unable to focus using autofocus.

The AF-ON Buttons

For the purpose of focusing the camera, pressing either of the **AF-ON** buttons has the same effect as pressing the shutter-release button halfway (the **AF-ON** button for vertical shooting can only be used when the shutter-release button for vertical shooting is unlocked).





a1—AF-C Mode Priority (☞ 185)

If **Focus** is selected for Custom Setting a1 (**AF-C mode priority**), photographs can be taken in continuous servo-AF only when the camera is in focus. Select **FPS rate + AF** for improved focus during continuous shooting.

a2—AF-S Mode Priority (☞ 185)

If **Release** is selected for Custom Setting a2 (**AF-S mode priority**), photographs can be taken in single servo-AF even when the camera is not in focus.

a5—AF Activation (☞ 188)

If **AF-ON only** is selected for Custom Setting a5 (**AF activation**), the camera will only focus when one of the **AF-ON** buttons is pressed, not when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway.

a8—Vertical AF-ON (☞ 190)

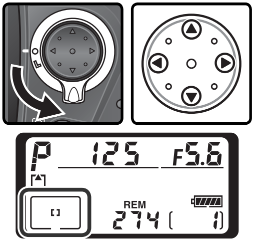
Custom Setting a8 (**Vertical AF-ON**) controls whether the **AF-ON** button for vertical shooting is used to initiate autofocus, select the focus area, or both.

c2—AE-L/AF-L (☞ 195)

If desired, the **AE-L/AF-L** button can perform the same function as the **AF-ON** button.

Focus Area Selection

The D2Xs offers a choice of eleven focus areas that together cover a wide area of the frame. The focus area can be selected manually, allowing photographs to be composed the main subject positioned almost anywhere in the frame, or automatically to ensure that the subject closest to the camera is always in focus regardless of where it is the frame (closest-subject priority; 👁 79). Group dynamic-AF can be used to focus on the closest subject in a selected area of the frame (👁 79).



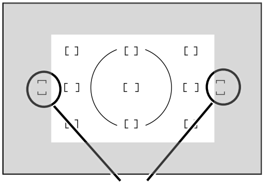
To select the focus area, rotate the focus selector lock. The multi selector can then be used to select the focus area. The selected focus area is displayed in the top control panel and is highlighted briefly in the viewfinder.

To select the center focus area (or focus area group) at any time, press the center of the multi selector.

The focus selector lock can be rotated to the locked position following selection to prevent the selected focus area from changing when the multi selector is pressed.

High-Speed Crop

The two focus areas outside the high-speed crop are not available when high-speed crop is on (👁 41).



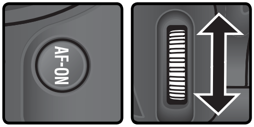
Focus areas not available when high-speed crop is on

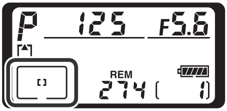
Focus Area Selection

The focus area can not be changed during playback or while menus are displayed.

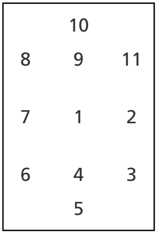
Focus Area Selection for Portrait (Tall) Orientation Photographs

If the shutter-release button for vertical shooting is unlocked, the focus area can also be selected by pressing the **AF-ON** button for vertical shooting and rotating the sub-command dial for vertical shooting. The selected focus area is displayed in the top control panel and is highlighted briefly in the viewfinder.





Rotate the sub-command dial clockwise to cycle endlessly through focus areas in the order shown at right, counter-clockwise to cycle through focus areas in the reverse order. Focus areas 5 and 10 are not available when high-speed crop is on.



a6—Focus Area Illum (👁 189)

Custom Setting a6 (**Focus area Illum**) controls how long the focus area is illuminated in the viewfinder after selection and whether focus areas are displayed in manual focus mode or continuous shooting mode.

a7—Focus Area (👁 190)

This option can be used to set focus area selection to “wrap around.”

a8—Vertical AF-ON (👁 190)

Custom Setting a8 (**Vertical AF-ON**) controls whether the **AF-ON** button for vertical shooting is used to initiate autofocus, select the focus area, or both.

f1—Center Button > Shooting Mode (👁 205)

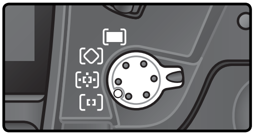
Depending on the option selected for **Center button > Shooting mode** (Custom Setting f1), pressing the center of the multi selector will have no effect or will illuminate the selected focus area.

Autofocus

When the focus mode selector is set to **S** (single-servo autofocus) or **C** (continuous-servo autofocus), the camera focuses automatically when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. This section describes focus options that are only available in single- and continuous-servo AF.

AF-Area Mode

AF-area mode determines how the focus area is selected in autofocus mode. To select the AF-area mode, rotate the AF-area mode selector. The selected mode is shown by an icon in the top control panel (see following page).



✎ Manual Focus

Single-area AF is automatically selected when manual focus is used.

✎ The Top Control Panel

The selected focus area or group of focus areas is shown in the top control panel in single-area AF, dynamic-area AF, and group dynamic-AF. The illustrations in the "Icon" column show the display when the center focus area or focus area group is selected. The top control panel display does not show the focus area selected by the camera for dynamic-area AF with closest subject priority.

CSM a1—AF-C Mode Priority (☞ 185)

In focus mode **C** (continuous-servo autofocus) photographs can be taken even when the camera is not in focus (*release priority*). To ensure that the camera is in focus when the picture is taken, choose **Focus** for Custom Setting a1 (**AF-C mode priority**). Select **FPS rate + AF** for improved focus during continuous shooting.

CSM a2—AF-S Mode Priority (☞ 185)

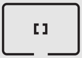
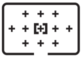
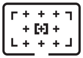
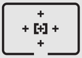
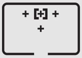
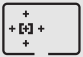
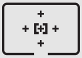
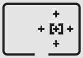
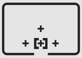
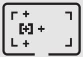
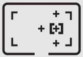
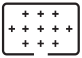
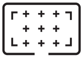
In focus mode **S** (single-servo autofocus) photographs can be taken only when the camera is in focus (*focus priority*). To allow photographs to be taken regardless of whether or not the camera is in focus, choose **Release** for Custom Setting a2 (**AF-S mode priority**).

CSM a3—Group Dynamic AF (☞ 186)

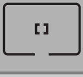
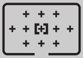
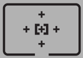
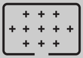
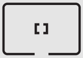
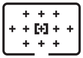
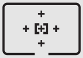
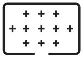
This option controls how focus areas are grouped in group dynamic-AF mode and whether the camera tracks the subject in the center focus area of the selected group.

CSM a4—Lock-On (☞ 188)

This option controls whether the camera immediately adjusts focus to track a subject when the distance to the subject changes drastically.

Mode	Icon	Description
[□] Single-area AF		User selects focus area manually; camera focuses on subject in selected focus area only. Use for relatively static compositions with subjects that will stay in selected focus area. Focus areas outside high-speed crop can not be selected when high-speed crop is on (👁 41).
[·□·] Dynamic-area AF		User selects focus area manually, but camera uses information from multiple focus areas to determine focus. If subject leaves selected focus area even briefly, camera will focus based on information from other focus areas (focus area selected in viewfinder does not change). Use when following erratically moving subjects in continuous-servo AF and in other situations in which it is difficult to keep subject in selected focus area. • When high-speed crop is on (👁 41), focus areas outside high-speed crop can not be selected, and camera will not use these areas to determine focus. 
[◇] Group dynamic-AF		User chooses focus area group (see right). Camera focuses on center of selected group; if subject leaves focus area even briefly, camera focuses based on information from other focus areas in same group. Use when subject is moving erratically but place of subject in overall composition is known.  Top  Left  Center  Right  Bottom • When high-speed crop is on (👁 41), left and right focus-area groups do not include focus areas outside high-speed crop.  Left  Right
[■] Dynamic-area AF with closest subject priority		Camera selects focus area containing principal subject closest to camera. Prevents out-of-focus shots when photographing erratically moving subjects. Focus area can not be selected manually, and focus areas are not displayed in viewfinder or top control panel. Camera may be unable to select focus area containing closest subject when telephoto lens is used or subject is poorly lit. Single-area AF is recommended in these cases. • When high-speed crop is on (👁 41), camera will not select focus areas outside high-speed crop. 

Summary of Autofocus Options

Focus mode	AF-area mode	Control-panel display	Focus-area selection
AF-S	Single-area AF		Manual
	Dynamic-area AF		Manual
	Group dynamic-AF		Manual (camera focuses on center focus area of selected group)
	Dynamic-area AF with closest-subject priority		Automatic
AF-C	Single-area AF		Manual
	Dynamic-area AF		Manual
	Group dynamic-AF		Manual (camera focuses on center focus area of selected group)
	Dynamic-area AF with closest-subject priority		Automatic

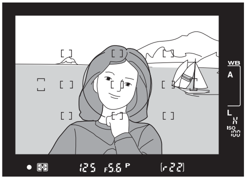
How it works	When to use it
Camera focuses on subject in selected focus area. Focus will remain locked while shutter-release button is pressed halfway.	Use with static subjects when time is available to compose photo.
Camera focuses on subject in selected focus area. If subject moves before camera has focused, camera will focus based on information from other focus areas. Focus will remain locked while shutter-release button is pressed halfway.	Use with static subjects when time is available to compose photo.
As above, except camera focuses on subject in center focus area of selected group. If subject moves before camera has focused, camera will focus based on information from other focus areas in same group.	Use when sure of subject's place in overall composition but unsure of its exact position.
As above, except that camera selects focus area containing principal subject closest to camera. If subject moves before camera has focused, camera will focus based on information from other focus areas.	Use when sure that subject will be closest object to camera but unsure where it will appear in final composition.
Camera continues to focus on subject in selected focus area while shutter-release button is pressed halfway.	Use with moving subjects that can be continuously framed in single focus area.
Camera focuses on subject in selected focus area. While shutter-release button is pressed halfway, camera tracks subject as it moves from one focus area to the next.	Use with subjects that are moving unpredictably.
As above, except camera focuses on subject in center focus area of selected group.	Use when sure of moving subject's place in overall composition but unable to predict its exact position.
As above, except that camera selects focus area containing principal subject closest to camera.	Use with erratically moving subjects when you know subject will be closest object to camera.

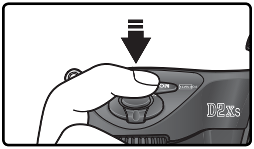
Focus Lock

Focus lock can be used to change the composition after focusing, making it possible to focus on a subject that will not be in a focus area in the final composition. It can also be used when the autofocus system is unable to focus (☞ 84).

In single-servo AF, focus locks automatically when the in-focus indicator (●) appears in the viewfinder. In continuous-servo AF, focus must be locked manually using the **AE-L/AF-L** button. To recompose a photograph using focus lock:

1 Position the subject in the selected focus area and press the shutter-release button halfway to initiate focus.

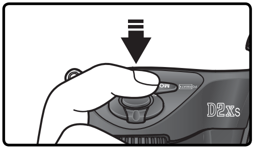




2 Check that the in-focus indicator (●) appears in the viewfinder.

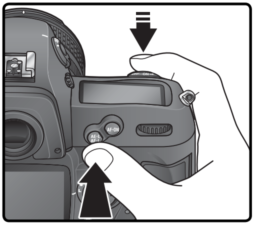
Single-servo AF

Focus will lock automatically when the in-focus indicator appears, and remain locked until you remove your finger from the shutter-release button. Focus can also be locked by pressing the **AE-L/AF-L** button (see below).

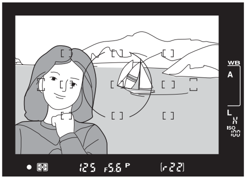


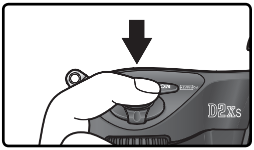
Continuous-servo AF

Press the **AE-L/AF-L** button to lock both focus and exposure. Focus will remain locked while the **AE-L/AF-L** button is pressed, even if you later remove your finger from the shutter-release button.



3 Recompose the photograph and shoot.





In single-servo AF, focus will remain locked between shots as long as the shutter-release button is kept pressed halfway, allowing several photographs in succession to be taken at the same focus setting. Focus will also remain locked between shots while the **AE-L/AF-L** button is pressed.

Do not change the distance between the camera and the subject while focus lock is in effect. If the subject moves, focus again at the new distance.

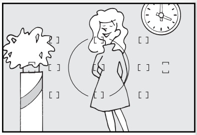
c2—AE-L/AF-L (195)

This option controls whether the **AE-L/AF-L** button locks focus and exposure (the default setting), focus only, or exposure only.

Getting Good Results with Autofocus

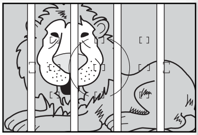
Autofocus does not perform well under the conditions listed below. If the camera is unable to focus using autofocus, use manual focus (☞ 85) or use focus lock (☞ 82) to focus on another subject at the same distance and then recompose the photograph.

There is little or no contrast between the subject and the background



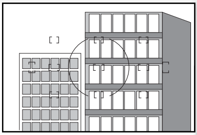
Example: subject is the same color as the background.

The focus area contains objects at different distances from the camera



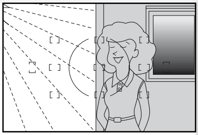
Example: subject is inside a cage.

The subject is dominated by regular geometric patterns



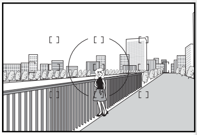
Example: a row of windows in a skyscraper.

The focus area contains areas of sharply contrasting brightness



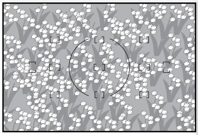
Example: subject is half in the shade.

The subject appears smaller than the focus area



Example: focus area contains both foreground subject and distant buildings.

The subject many contains fine details

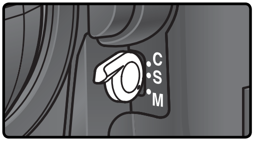


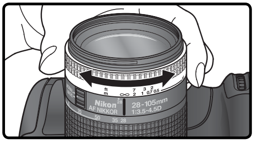
Example: a field of flowers or other subjects that are small or lack variation in brightness.

AF-Assist Illuminators

If the subject is dark, an optional Speedlight with an AF-assist illuminator can be used to assist the autofocus.

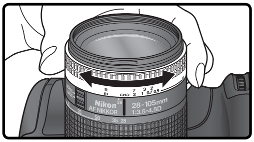
Manual Focus





Manual focus is available for lenses that do not support autofocus (non-AF Nikkor lenses) or when the autofocus does not produce the desired results (👁 84). To focus manually, set the focus-mode selector to **M** and adjust the lens focusing ring until the image displayed on the clear matte field in the viewfinder is in focus. Photographs can be taken at any time, even when the image is not in focus.

The Electronic Range Finder

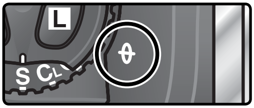


If the lens has a maximum aperture of f/5.6 or faster, the viewfinder focus indicator can be used to confirm whether the subject in the selected focus area is in focus. After positioning the subject in the active focus area, press the shutter-release button halfway and rotate the lens focusing ring until the in-focus indicator (●) is displayed.

A-M Selection/Autofocus with Manual Priority

When using a lens that offers A-M selection, select M when focusing manually. With lenses that support M/A (autofocus with manual priority), focus can be adjusted manually with the lens set to M or M/A. See the documentation provided with your lens for details.

Focal Plane Position



To determine the distance between your subject and the camera, measure from the focal plane mark on the camera body. The distance between the lens mounting flange and the focal plane is 46.5 mm (1.83″).

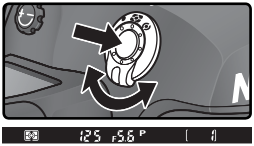
Metering

The metering method determines how the camera sets exposure:

Method	Description
3D color matrix II/ Color matrix II/ Color matrix	1,005-pixel RGB sensor sets exposure based on variety of information from all areas of frame. With type G or D lens, camera uses *3D color matrix metering II* for natural results even when frame is dominated by bright (white or yellow) or dark (black or dark green) colors. With other CPU lenses, 3D range information is not included; instead, camera uses *color matrix metering II*. *Color matrix metering* is available when focal length and maximum aperture of non-CPU lens are specified using **Non-CPU lens data** item in shooting menu (131; center-weighted metering is used if focal length or aperture is not specified). Matrix metering will not produce desired results with autoexposure lock (97) or exposure compensation (99), but is recommended in most other situations.
Center-weighted	Camera meters entire frame but assigns greatest weight to area in center of frame (defaults to area shown by 8-mm reference circle in viewfinder). Classic meter for portraits; recommended when using filters with an exposure factor (filter factor) over 1 × (249).*
Spot	Camera meters circle 3 mm (0.12″) in diameter (approximately 2% of frame). Circle is centered on current focus area (in group dynamic AF, on center focus area of current group; 78), making it possible to meter off-center subjects (if non-CPU lens is used or if dynamic-area AF with closest subject priority is in effect, camera will meter center focus area). Ensures that subject will be correctly exposed, even when background is much brighter or darker.*

* For improved precision with non-CPU lenses, specify lens focal length and maximum aperture in **Non-CPU lens data** menu (131).

Before shooting, press the metering selector lock button and rotate the metering selector to choose a method suited to the composition and lighting conditions, and confirm your selection in the viewfinder.



b6—Center Weight (194)

This option controls the size of the area assigned the greatest weight in center-weighted metering.

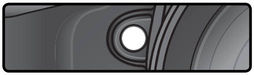
Exposure Mode

Exposure mode determines how the camera sets shutter speed and aperture when adjusting exposure. Four modes are available: programmed auto (**P**), shutter-priority auto (**S**), aperture-priority auto (**A**), and manual (**M**).

CPU Lenses

When using a CPU lens equipped with an aperture ring, lock the aperture ring at the minimum aperture (highest f/-number). At other settings, the shutter release will be disabled and a blinking FEE will appear in the aperture displays in the top control panel and viewfinder. Type G lenses are not equipped with an aperture ring.

Depth-of-Field Preview



To preview the effects of aperture, press and hold the depth-of-field preview button. The lens will be stopped down to the aperture value selected by the camera (modes **P** and **S**) or the value chosen by the user (modes **A** and **M**), allowing depth of field to be previewed in the viewfinder.

b1—ISO Auto (191)

When Custom Setting b1 (**ISO auto**) is on, the camera automatically varies ISO sensitivity between ISO 100 equivalent and a maximum selected by the user to help ensure optimum exposure. In exposure modes **P** and **A**, the camera adjusts ISO sensitivity when the shutter speed needed to obtain optimum exposure would be faster than 1/8,000 s or slower than a specified value. Otherwise the camera adjusts ISO sensitivity when the limits of the camera exposure metering system are exceeded (mode **S**) or when optimum exposure can not be achieved at the shutter speed and aperture selected by the user (mode **M**). When ISO sensitivity is altered from the value selected by the user, **ISO-AUTO** will flash in the rear control panel and a flashing **ISO-A** will be displayed in the viewfinder. Note that noise is more likely to appear in photographs taken at higher ISO sensitivities.

On can not be selected for **ISO auto** when ISO sensitivity is set to a value over ISO 800; similarly, values over ISO 800 can not be selected when **ISO auto** is on.

b7—Fine-Tune Exposure (194)

Optimal exposure can be fine-tuned separately for each metering method (note that the exposure compensation icon is not displayed when exposure is fine-tuned).

e4—Modeling Flash (202)

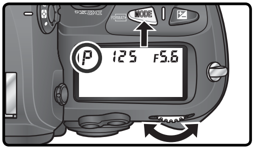
This setting controls whether the SB-800, SB-600, and other optional flash units that support the Creative Lighting System (CLS; 108) will emit a modeling flash when the depth-of-field preview button is pressed.

P: Programmed Auto

In this mode, the camera automatically adjusts shutter speed and aperture according to a built-in program (see below) for optimal exposure in most situations. This mode is recommended for snapshots and other situations in which you want to leave the camera in charge of shutter speed and aperture. Adjustments can be made using flexible program, exposure compensation (👁 99), and auto exposure bracketing (👁 100). Programmed auto is only available with CPU lenses.

To take photographs in programmed auto:

1 Press the MODE button and rotate the main command dial until **P** is displayed in the viewfinder and top control panel.



2 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.

Non-CPU Lenses

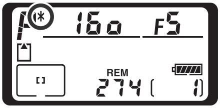
Exposure mode **A** (aperture-priority auto) is automatically selected when a non-CPU lens is attached. The exposure mode indicator (**P**) in the top control panel will blink and **A** will be displayed in the viewfinder. For more information, see “Aperture-Priority Auto” (👁 92).

Exposure Warning

If the limits of the exposure metering system are exceeded, one of the following indicators will be displayed in the control panel and viewfinder:

Indicator	Description
Hi	Subject too bright. Use optional Neutral Density (ND) filter or lower ISO sensitivity (👁 52).
Lo	Subject too dark. Use optional Speedlight or raise ISO sensitivity (👁 52).

Flexible Program

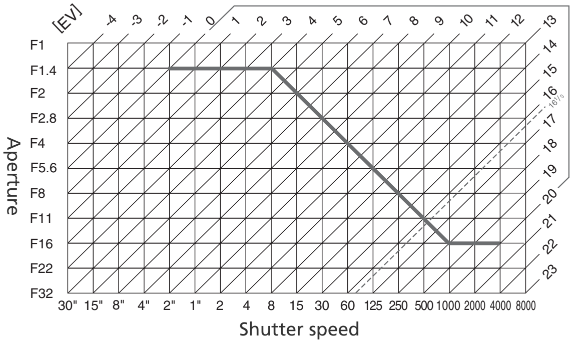


In programmed auto, different combinations of shutter speed and aperture can be selected by rotating the main command dial ("flexible program"). All combinations produce the same exposure. While flexible program is in effect, an asterisk ("*") appears next to the exposure-mode indicator in the top control panel. To restore default shutter speed and aperture settings, rotate the main command dial until the indicator is no longer displayed. Default settings can also be restored by turning the camera off, selecting another exposure mode, performing a two-button reset (👁 136), or choosing another setting for Custom Setting b3 (**EV step**; 👁 192).

Exposure Program

The exposure program for programmed auto is shown in the following graph:

ISO 100; lens with maximum aperture of f/1.4 and minimum aperture of f/16 (e.g., AF 50 mm f/1.4 D)



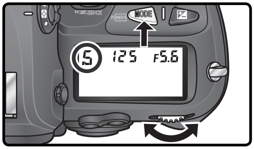
The maximum and minimum values for EV vary with ISO sensitivity; the above graph assumes an ISO sensitivity of ISO 100 equivalent. When matrix metering is used, values over 16⅓ EV are reduced to 16⅓ EV.

S: Shutter-Priority Auto

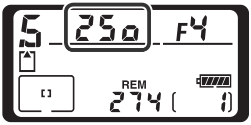
In shutter-priority auto, you choose the shutter speed while the camera automatically selects the aperture that will produce the optimal exposure. Shutter speed can be set to values between 30 s and 1/8,000 s. Use slow shutter speeds to suggest motion by blurring moving objects, high shutter speeds to "freeze" motion. Shutter-priority auto is only available with CPU lenses.

To take photographs in shutter-priority auto:

1 Press the MODE button and rotate the main command dial until **S** is displayed in the viewfinder and top control panel.



2 Rotate the main command dial to choose the desired shutter speed.



3 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.

Non-CPU Lenses

Exposure mode **A** (aperture-priority auto) is automatically selected when a non-CPU lens is attached. The exposure mode indicator (**S**) in the top control panel will blink and **A** will be displayed in the viewfinder. For more information, see "Aperture-Priority Auto" (☞ 92).

Changing from Manual to Shutter-Priority Auto

If you select a shutter speed of bulb in manual exposure mode and then select shutter-priority auto without changing the shutter speed, the bulb indicator in the shutter-speed display will flash and the shutter can not be released. Rotate the main command dial to select a different shutter speed before shooting.

Exposure Warning

If the camera is unable to produce the correct exposure at the selected shutter speed, the electronic analog exposure display (☞ 95) in the viewfinder will show the amount of under- or over-exposure and one of the following indicators will be displayed in the control panel and viewfinder aperture displays:

Indicator	Description
Hi	Subject too bright. Choose faster shutter speed or lower ISO sensitivity (☞ 52), or use optional Neutral Density (ND) filter.
Lo	Subject too dark. Choose slower shutter speed or higher ISO sensitivity (☞ 52), or use optional Speedlight.

Shutter-Speed Lock

Shutter speed can be locked at the selected setting (☞ 96).

Long Exp. NR (☞ 175)

To reduce noise at shutter speeds of about ½ s or slower, select **On** for the **Long exp. NR** option in the shooting menu. Note that noise and color distortion increase with temperature.

b3—EV Step (☞ 192)

This option controls whether changes to shutter speed and aperture are made in increments equivalent to ⅓ EV (the default setting), ½ EV, or 1 EV.

f6—Command Dials>Change main/sub (☞ 210)

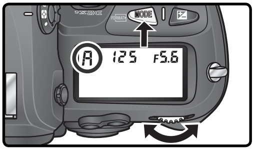
This option can be used to reverse the roles of the command dials so that the sub-command dial controls shutter speed, while the main command dial controls aperture.

A: Aperture-Priority Auto

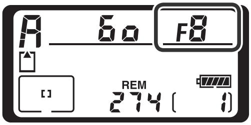
In aperture-priority auto, you choose the aperture while the camera automatically selects the shutter speed that will produce the optimal exposure. Small apertures (high f/-numbers) increase depth of field, bringing both the main subject and background into focus. Large apertures (low f/-numbers) soften background details and let more light into the camera, increasing the range of the flash and making photographs less susceptible to blurring.

To take photographs in aperture-priority auto:

1 Press the MODE button and rotate the main command dial until **A** is displayed in the viewfinder and top control panel.

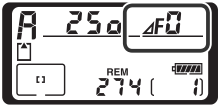


2 Rotate the sub-command dial to choose the desired aperture.



3 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.

Non-CPU Lenses



If the maximum aperture of the lens has been specified using the **Non-CPU lens data** item in shooting menu (131) when a non-CPU lens is attached, the current f/-number will be displayed in the viewfinder and top control panel, rounded to the nearest full stop. Otherwise the aperture displays will show only the number of stops (**ΔF**, with maximum aperture displayed as **ΔF0**) and the f/-number must be read from the lens aperture ring.

Exposure Warning

If the camera is unable to produce the correct exposure at the selected aperture, the electronic analog exposure display (95) in the viewfinder will show the amount of under- or over-exposure and one of the following indicators will be displayed in the control panel and viewfinder shutter-speed displays:

Indicator	Description
Hi	Subject too bright. Choose smaller aperture (larger f/-number) or lower ISO sensitivity (52), or use optional Neutral Density (ND) filter.
Lo	Subject too dark. Choose larger aperture (smaller f/-number) or higher ISO sensitivity (52), or use optional Speedlight.

Aperture Lock

Aperture can be locked at the selected setting (96).

b3—EV Step (192)

This option controls whether changes to shutter speed and aperture are made in increments equivalent to ⅓ EV (the default setting), ½ EV, or 1 EV.

f6—Command Dials (210)

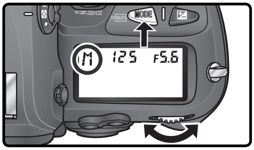
Command dials>**Change main/sub** and **Command dials**>**Aperture setting** control whether aperture is assigned with the main command dial, the sub-command dial, or the lens aperture ring. Regardless of the settings chosen, the command dials are always used with type G lenses, the lens aperture ring with non-CPU lenses.

M: Manual

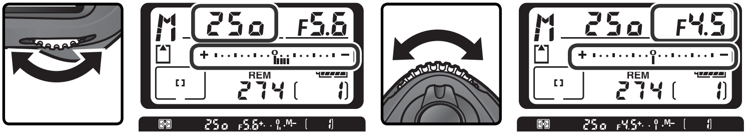
In manual exposure mode, you control both shutter speed and aperture. Shutter speed can be set to values between 30 s and 1⁄8,000 s, or the shutter can be held open indefinitely for a long time-exposure (bulb). Aperture can be set to values between the minimum and maximum values for the lens. Using the electronic analog exposure display in the viewfinder, you can adjust exposure according to shooting conditions and the task at hand.

To take photographs in manual exposure mode:

1 Press the MODE button and rotate the main command dial until **M** is displayed in the viewfinder and top control panel.



2 Rotate the main command dial to choose a shutter speed, and the sub-command dial to set aperture. Check exposure in the electronic analog exposure displays (see right), and continue to adjust shutter speed and aperture until the desired exposure is achieved.



3 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.

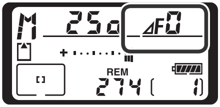
Long Time-Exposures

At a shutter speed of bulb, the shutter will remain open while the shutter-release button is held down. Nikon recommends using a fully-charged EN-EL4a battery or an optional EH-6 AC adapter to prevent loss of power while the shutter is open. Note that if the shutter is open for more than approximately ½ s at any setting, "noise" in the form of randomly-spaced, brightly-colored pixels may appear in the final photograph.

AF Micro Nikkor Lenses

Provided that an external exposure meter is used, the exposure ratio need only be taken into account when the lens aperture ring is used to set aperture.

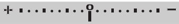
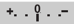
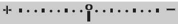
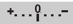
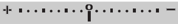
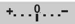
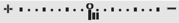
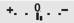
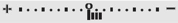
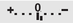
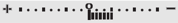
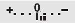
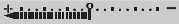
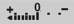
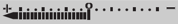
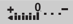
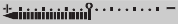
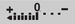
Non-CPU Lenses

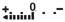


If the maximum aperture of the lens has been specified using the **Non-CPU lens data** item in shooting menu (☞ 131) when a non-CPU lens is attached, the current f/-number will be displayed in the viewfinder and top control panel, rounded to the nearest full stop. Otherwise the aperture displays will show only the number of stops (**ΔF**, with maximum aperture displayed as **ΔF0**) and the f/-number must be read from the lens aperture ring.

Electronic Analog Exposure Displays

The electronic analog exposure displays in the top control panel and viewfinder show whether the photograph would be under- or over-exposed at current settings. Depending on the option chosen for Custom Setting b3 (**EV step**), the amount of under- or over-exposure is shown in increments of ⅓ EV, ½ EV, or 1 EV. If the limits of the exposure metering system are exceeded, the displays will flash.

"EV step" set to "1/3 step"		"EV step" set to "1/2 step"		"EV step" set to "1 step"	
Top control panel	View-finder	Top control panel	View-finder	Top control panel	View-finder
Optimal exposure					
					
Underexposed by ⅓ EV		Underexposed by ½ EV		Underexposed by 1 EV	
					
Overexposed by more than 3 EV *					
					

* At **1/3 step**,  appears in the viewfinder when overexposure exceeds 2 EV.

Long Exp. NR (☞ 175)

To reduce noise at shutter speeds of about ½ s or slower, select **On** for the **Long exp. NR** option in the shooting menu. Note that noise and color distortion increase with temperature.

b3—EV Step (☞ 192)

This option controls whether changes to shutter speed and aperture are made in increments equivalent to ⅓ EV (the default setting), ½ EV, or 1 EV.

f6—Command Dials (☞ 210)

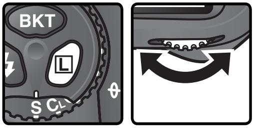
Command dials > **Change main/sub** and **Command dials** > **Aperture setting** control whether aperture is assigned with the main command dial, the sub-command dial, or the lens aperture ring. Regardless of the settings chosen, the command dials are always used with type G lenses, the lens aperture ring with non-CPU lenses.

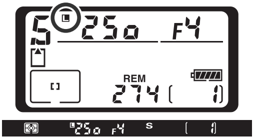
Shutter-Speed and Aperture Lock

The L button can be used to lock shutter speed at the value selected in shutter-priority auto or manual exposure mode, or to lock aperture at the value selected in aperture-priority auto and manual exposure modes. Lock is not available in programmed auto.

Shutter-Speed Lock

To lock shutter speed at the selected value, press the L button and rotate the main command dial until shutter-speed lock icons appear in the viewfinder and the top control panel.

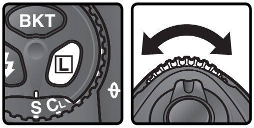


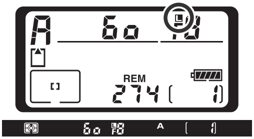


To unlock shutter speed, press the L button and rotate the main command dial until the lock icons disappear from the displays.

Aperture Lock

To lock aperture at the selected value, press the L button and rotate the sub-command dial until aperture lock icons appear in the viewfinder and the top control panel.



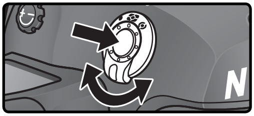


To unlock aperture, press the L button and rotate the sub-command dial until the lock icons disappear from the displays.

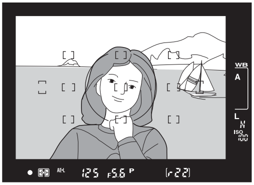
Autoexposure Lock

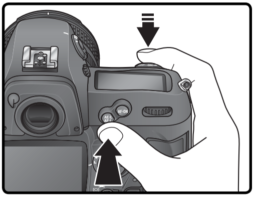
When center-weighted metering is used, an area in the center of the frame is assigned the greatest weight when determining exposure. Similarly, when spot metering is used, exposure is based upon lighting conditions in the selected focus area. If the subject is not in the metered area when the picture is taken, exposure will be based on lighting conditions in the background, and the main subject may be under- or over-exposed. To prevent this, use autoexposure lock:

1 Select center-weighted or spot metering. If using center-weighted metering, select the center focus area with the multi selector (☞ 76).



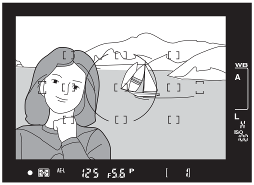
2 Position the subject in the selected focus area and press the shutter-release button halfway. With the shutter-release button pressed halfway and the subject positioned in the focus area, press the **AE-L/AF-L** button to lock exposure (and focus, except in manual focus mode). Confirm that the in-focus indicator (●) appears in the viewfinder.

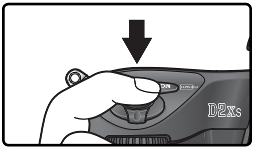




While exposure lock is in effect, an **AE-L** indicator will appear in the viewfinder.

3 Keeping the **AE-L/AF-L** button pressed, recompose the photograph and shoot.





Metered Area

In spot metering, exposure will be locked at the value metered in a 3-mm (0.12 in.) circle centered on the selected focus area. In center-weighted metering, exposure will be locked at the value metered in the center of the viewfinder (the default area for center-weighted metering is shown by the 8-mm circle in the viewfinder).

Adjusting Shutter Speed and Aperture

While exposure lock is in effect, the following settings can be changed without altering the metered value for exposure:

Exposure mode	Settings
Programmed auto	Shutter speed and aperture (flexible program; ☞ 89)
Shutter-priority auto	Shutter speed
Aperture-priority auto	Aperture

The new values can be confirmed in the viewfinder and control panel. Note that the metering method can not be changed while exposure lock is in effect (changes to metering take effect when the lock is released).

c1—AE Lock (☞ 195)

If **+ release button** is selected for **AE lock**, exposure will lock when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway.

c2—AE-L/AF-L (☞ 195)

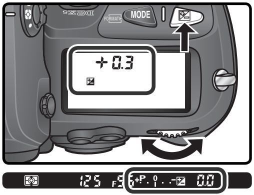
Depending on the option selected, the **AE-L/AF-L** button locks both focus and exposure (the default setting), only focus, or only exposure. Options are available for keeping exposure locked until the **AE-L/AF-L** button is pressed a second time, the shutter is released, or exposure meters turn off.

Exposure Compensation

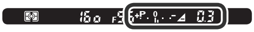
To obtain the desired results with certain subject compositions, it may be necessary to use exposure compensation to alter exposure from the value suggested by the camera. As a rule of thumb, positive compensation may be needed when the main subject is darker than the background, negative values when the main subject is brighter than the background.

1 Pressing the ⊠ button, rotate the main command dial and confirm exposure compensation in the top control panel or the viewfinder (in the viewfinder, positive values are shown by a ◤ icon, negative values by a ◺ icon). Exposure compensation can be set to values between –5 EV (underexposure) and +5 EV (overexposure) in increments of ⅓ EV.

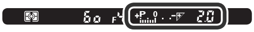
At values other than ±0, the 0 at the center of the electronic analog exposure displays will flash and a ⊠ icon will be displayed in the control panel and viewfinder after you release the ⊠ button. The current value for exposure compensation can be confirmed in the electronic analog exposure display or by pressing the ⊠ button.



±0 EV (⊠ button pressed)



–0.3 EV



+2.0 EV

2 Frame the photograph, focus, and shoot.

Normal exposure can be restored by setting exposure compensation to ±0 or performing a two button reset (👁 136). Exposure compensation is not reset when the camera is turned off.

CSM b4—Exposure Comp. EV (👁 193)

Use this option to set the increments for exposure compensation to ½ or 1 EV.

CSM b5—Exposure Comp. (👁 193)

If desired, exposure compensation can be set without pressing the ⊠ button.

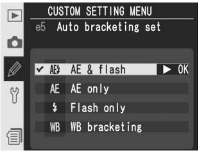
Bracketing

The D2Xs offers three types of bracketing: exposure bracketing, flash bracketing, and white balance bracketing. In exposure bracketing, the camera varies exposure compensation with each shot, while in the case of flash bracketing, flash level is varied with each shot (i-TTL and auto aperture flash control modes only; ☞ 108, 109). Only one photograph is produced each time the shutter is released, meaning that several shots (up to nine) are required to complete the bracketing sequence. Exposure and flash bracketing are recommended in situations in which it is difficult to set exposure and there is not enough time to check results and adjust settings with each shot.

In white balance bracketing, the camera creates multiple images each time the shutter is released, each with a different white balance adjustment (☞ 105). Only one shot is required to complete the bracketing sequence. White balance bracketing is recommended when shooting under mixed lighting or experimenting with different white balance settings. White balance bracketing is not available at white-balance settings of **K** (**Choose color temp.**) or **PRE** (preset) or at image qualities of **NEF (RAW)**, **NEF (RAW)+JPEG fine**, **NEF (RAW)+JPEG normal**, or **NEF (RAW)+JPEG basic**.

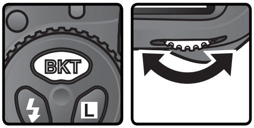
Exposure and Flash Bracketing

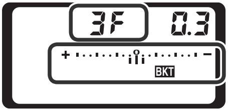
1 Select the type of bracketing to be performed using Custom Setting e5 (**Auto BKT set**; ☞ 203). Choose **AE & flash** to vary both exposure and flash level (the default setting), **AE only** to vary only exposure, or **Flash only** to vary only flash level.



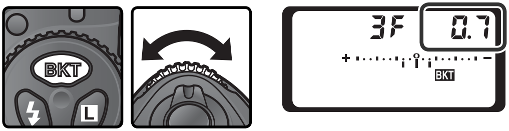
CUSTOM SETTING MENU
e5 Auto bracketing set
✓ AE⚡ AE & flash ▶ OK
AE AE only
⚡ Flash only
WB WB bracketing

2 Pressing the **BKT** button, rotate the main command dial to choose the number of shots in the bracketing sequence (☞ 102–104). At settings other than zero, a **BKT** icon and bracketing indicator will be displayed in the top control panel, and a **BKT** icon will appear in the viewfinder.



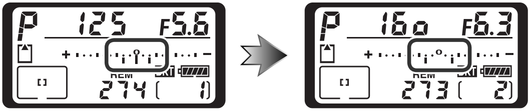


3 Pressing the **BKT** button, rotate the sub-command dial to choose the exposure increment (👁 102–104).



4 Compose a photograph, focus, and shoot. The camera will vary exposure and/or flash level shot-by-shot according to the bracketing program selected. Modifications to exposure are added to those made with exposure compensation (👁 99), making it possible to achieve exposure compensation values of more than 5 EV.

While bracketing is in effect, a bracketing progress indicator will be displayed in the top control panel. A segment will disappear from the indicator after each shot.



To cancel bracketing, press the **BKT** button and rotate the main command dial until the number of shots in the bracketing sequence is zero and **BKT** is no longer displayed in the control panel on top of the camera. The program last in effect will be restored the next time bracketing is activated. Bracketing can also be cancelled by performing a two-button reset (👁 136), although in this case the bracketing program will not be restored the next time bracketing is activated. Selecting **WB bracketing** for Custom Setting e5 cancels the current the bracketing program.

Shooting Mode

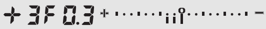
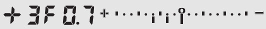
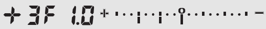
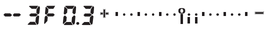
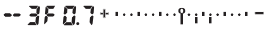
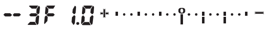
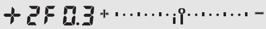
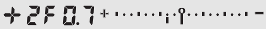
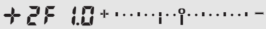
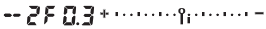
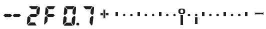
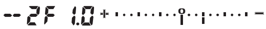
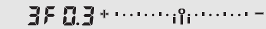
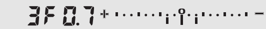
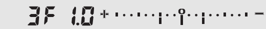
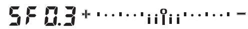
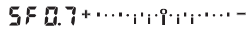
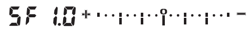
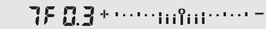
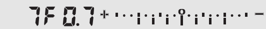
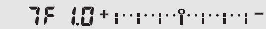
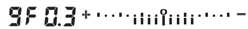
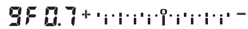
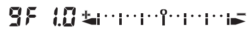
In single frame and self-timer modes, one shot will be taken each time the shutter-release button is pressed. In continuous low speed and continuous high speed modes, shooting will pause after the number of shots specified in the bracketing program have been taken. Shooting will resume the next time the shutter-release button is pressed.

e8—Auto BKT Selection (👁 205)

If desired, the main command dial can be used to turn bracketing on and off and the sub-command dial to select both the number of shots and the exposure increment.

The bracketing programs available depend on the option selected for Custom Setting b3 (**EV step**; 192).

1/3 Step *Selected for* **EV Step**

Control panel display	No. of shots	Exposure increment	Bracketing order (EVs)
	3	+⅓ EV	+0.3, 0, +0.7
	3	+⅔ EV	+0.7, 0, +1.3
	3	+1 EV	+1.0, 0, +2.0
	3	–⅓ EV	–0.3, –0.7, 0
	3	–⅔ EV	–0.7, –1.3, 0
	3	–1 EV	–1.0, –2.0, 0
	2	+⅓ EV	0, +0.3
	2	+⅔ EV	0, +0.7
	2	+1 EV	0, +1.0
	2	–⅓ EV	0, –0.3
	2	–⅔ EV	0, –0.7
	2	–1 EV	0, –1.0
	3	±⅓ EV	0, –0.3, +0.3
	3	±⅔ EV	0, –0.7, +0.7
	3	±1 EV	0, –1.0, +1.0
	5	±⅓ EV	0, –0.7, –0.3, +0.3, +0.7
	5	±⅔ EV	0, –1.3, –0.7, +0.7, +1.3
	5	±1 EV	0, –2.0, –1.0, +1.0, +2.0
	7	±⅓ EV	0, –1.0, –0.7, –0.3, +0.3, +0.7, +1.0
	7	±⅔ EV	0, –2.0, –1.3, –0.7, +0.7, +1.3, +2.0
	7	±1 EV	0, –3.0, –2.0, –1.0, +1.0, +2.0, +3.0
	9	±⅓ EV	0, –1.3, –1.0, –0.7, –0.3, +0.3, +0.7, +1.0, +1.3
	9	±⅔ EV	0, –2.7, –2.0, –1.3, –0.7, +0.7, +1.3, +2.0, +2.7
	9	±1 EV	0, –4.0, –3.0, –2.0, –1.0, +1.0, +2.0, +3.0, +4.0

1/2 Step *Selected for* EV Step

Control panel display	No. of shots	Exposure increment	Bracketing order (EVs)
+3F 0.5	3	+½ EV	+0.5, 0, +1.0
+3F 1.0	3	+1 EV	+1.0, 0, +2.0
--3F 0.5	3	–½ EV	–0.5, –1.0, 0
--3F 1.0	3	–1 EV	–1.0, –2.0, 0
+2F 0.5	2	+½ EV	0, +0.5
+2F 1.0	2	+1 EV	0, +1.0
--2F 0.5	2	–½ EV	0, –0.5
--2F 1.0	2	–1 EV	0, –1.0
3F 0.5	3	±½ EV	0, –0.5, +0.5
3F 1.0	3	±1 EV	0, –1.0, +1.0
5F 0.5	5	±½ EV	0, –1.0, –0.5, +0.5, +1.0
5F 1.0	5	±1 EV	0, –2.0, –1.0, +1.0, +2.0
7F 0.5	7	±½ EV	0, –1.5, –1.0, –0.5, +0.5, +1.0, +1.5
7F 1.0	7	±1 EV	0, –3.0, –2.0, –1.0, +1.0, +2.0, +3.0
9F 0.5	9	±½ EV	0, –2.0, –1.5, –1.0, –0.5, +0.5, +1.0, +1.5, +2.0
9F 1.0	9	±1 EV	0, –4.0, –3.0, –2.0, –1.0, +1.0, +2.0, +3.0, +4.0

1 Step *Selected for* **EV Step**

Control panel display	No. of shots	Exposure increment	Bracketing order (EVs)
+3F 1.0	3	+1 EV	+1.0, 0, +2.0
−3F 1.0	3	–1 EV	–1.0, –2.0, 0
+2F 1.0	2	+1 EV	0, +1.0
−2F 1.0	2	–1 EV	0, –1.0
3F 1.0	3	±1 EV	0, –1.0, +1.0
5F 1.0	5	±1 EV	0, –2.0, –1.0, +1.0, +2.0
7F 1.0	7	±1 EV	0, –3.0, –2.0, –1.0, +1.0, +2.0, +3.0
9F 1.0	9	±1 EV	0, –4.0, –3.0, –2.0, –1.0, +1.0, +2.0, +3.0, +4.0

Resuming Exposure or Flash Bracketing

If the memory card fills before all shots in the sequence have been taken, shooting can be resumed from the next shot in the sequence after the memory card has been replaced or shots have been deleted to make room on the memory card. If the camera is turned off before all shots in the sequence have been taken, bracketing will resume from the next shot in the sequence when the camera is turned on.

Exposure Bracketing

The camera modifies exposure by varying shutter speed and aperture (programmed auto), aperture (shutter-priority auto), or shutter speed (aperture-priority auto, manual exposure mode). When **On** is selected for Custom Setting b1 (**ISO auto**) and no Speedlight is attached, the camera will automatically vary ISO sensitivity for optimum exposure when the limits of the camera exposure system are exceeded. If Custom Setting e5 (**Auto BKT set**) is set **AE only** or to **AE & Flash** with no Speedlight attached and **On** is selected for Custom Setting b1 (**ISO auto**), the camera will vary ISO sensitivity without varying shutter speed or aperture, regardless of the setting chosen for Custom Setting e6 (see below).

e6—Manual Mode Bkting (204)

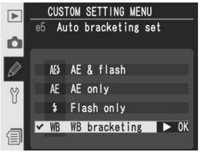
This option controls how the camera performs exposure and flash bracketing in manual exposure mode. Bracketing can be performed by varying flash level together with shutter speed and/or aperture, or by varying flash level alone.

e7—Auto BKT Order (204)

This option can be used to change the bracketing order.

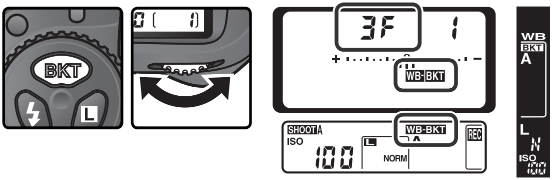
White Balance Bracketing

1 Choose **WB bracketing** for Custom Setting e5 (**Auto BKT set**; ☞ 203).

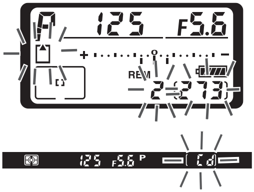


CUSTOM SETTING MENU
e5 Auto bracketing set
AE & flash
AE only
Flash only
✓ WB bracketing ▶ OK

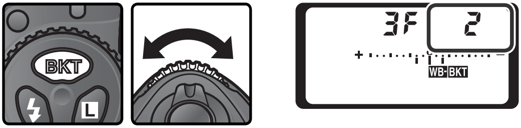
2 Pressing the BKT button, rotate the main command dial to choose the number of shots in the bracketing sequence (☞ 107). At settings other than zero, a WB-BKT icon and bracketing indicator will appear in the top control panel. The rear control panel will show WB-BKT and the viewfinder BKT.



If the number of shots in the bracketing program is greater than the number of exposures remaining, a flashing ▯ icon will appear in the top control panel and the frame count and number of exposures remaining will flash. A flashing Cd indicator will appear in the viewfinder and the shutter release will be disabled. Shooting can begin when a new memory card is inserted.



3 Pressing the BKT button, rotate the sub-command dial to choose the white balance adjustment (☞ 107). Each increment is roughly equivalent to 10 mired.



4 Compose a photograph, focus, and shoot. Each shot will be processed to create the number of copies specified in the bracketing program, and each copy will have a different white balance. Modifications to white balance are added to the white balance adjustment made with white balance fine-tuning (☞ 57).

To cancel bracketing, press the BKT button and rotate the main command dial until the number of shots in the bracketing sequence is zero and white-balance bracketing indicators are no longer displayed in the control panels and viewfinder. The program last in effect will be restored the next time bracketing is activated. Bracketing can also be cancelled by performing a two-button reset (☞ 136), although in this case the bracketing program will not be restored the next time bracketing is activated.

White Balance Bracketing

White balance bracketing is not available at white-balance settings of K (**Choose color temp.**) or PRE (preset) or at an image quality of NEF (RAW). Selecting **NEF (RAW)**, **NEF (RAW)+JPEG fine**, **NEF (RAW)+JPEG normal**, or **NEF (RAW)+JPEG basic** cancels white balance bracketing.

Shooting Mode

In single frame and self-timer modes, the number of copies specified in the white balance program will be created each time the shutter is released. In continuous low speed and continuous high speed modes, only one shot will be taken each time the shutter-release button is pressed. Each shot will be processed to create the number of copies specified in the bracketing program.

Turning the Camera Off

If the camera is turned off while the camera while the memory card access lamp is lit, the camera will power off only after all photographs in the sequence have been recorded. To turn the camera off without recording the remaining photographs, press the 🗑 button while turning the camera off (keep the 🗑 button pressed for at least one second after turning the camera off).

e8—Auto BKT Selection (☞ 205)

If desired, the main command dial can be used to turn bracketing on and off and the sub-command dial to select both the number of shots and the white-balance increment.

The number of shots, white balance (WB) increment, and bracketing order for each of the possible white-balance bracketing programs is shown below.

Control panel display	No. of shots	WB increment	Bracketing order
+3F 1	3	+1	+1, 0, +2
+3F 2	3	+2	+2, 0, +4
+3F 3	3	+3	+3, 0, +6
-3F 1	3	–1	–1, –2, 0
-3F 2	3	–2	–2, –4, 0
-3F 3	3	–3	–3, –6, 0
+2F 1	2	+1	0, +1
+2F 2	2	+2	0, +2
+2F 3	2	+3	0, +3
-2F 1	2	–1	0, –1
-2F 2	2	–2	0, –2
-2F 3	2	–3	0, –3
3F 1	3	±1	0, –1, +1
3F 2	3	±2	0, –2, +2
3F 3	3	±3	0, –3, +3
5F 1	5	±1	0, –2, –1, +1, +2
5F 2	5	±2	0, –4, –2, +2, +4
5F 3	5	±3	0, –6, –3, +3, +6
7F 1	7	±1	0, –3, –2, –1, +1, +2, +3
7F 2	7	±2	0, –6, –4, –2, +2, +4, +6
7F 3	7	±3	0, –9, –6, –3, +3, +6, +9
9F 1	9	±1	0, –4, –3, –2, –1, +1, +2, +3, +4
9F 2	9	±2	0, –8, –6, –4, –2, +2, +4, +6, +8
9F 1	9	±3	0, –12, –9, –6, –3, +3, +6, +9, +12

CSM e7—Auto BKT Order (204)

This option can be used to change the bracketing order.

Flash Photography

Using Optional Speedlights

The D2Xs supports flash photography when an optional Speedlight is mounted on the camera's accessory shoe. A flash can be used not only when natural lighting is inadequate, but also to fill in shadows, illuminate back-lit subjects, and even to add a catch light to the eyes of a portrait subject.

Compatible Flash Units

The D2Xs can be used with the following types of Nikon flash unit:

CLS-Compatible Flash Units (👁 108–109): The D2Xs supports the full range of options available with optional flash units that support the Nikon Creative Lighting system (CLS), including i-TTL flash control (👁 108), Advanced Wireless Lighting, FV lock (👁 114), Auto FP High-Speed Sync, and Flash Color Information Communication (👁 55). See the Speedlight manual for details.

- **SB-800** and **SB-600** Speedlights
- **SB-R200** remote wireless Speedlight
- **SU-800** wireless Speedlight commander

D-TTL Compatible Speedlights (👁 110):

- **SB-80DX**
- **SB-28DX**
- **SB-50DX**

Other Speedlights (👁 111)

CLS-Compatible Flash Units: i-TTL Flash Control

When a CLS-compatible flash unit is set to TTL, the camera automatically selects one of the following types of flash control:

i-TTL Balanced Fill-Flash for Digital SLR: Speedlight emits series of nearly invisible preflashes (monitor preflashes) immediately before main flash. Preflashes reflected from objects in all areas of frame are picked up by five-segment TTL flash control sensor or 1,005-pixel RGB sensor and are analyzed in combination with information from matrix metering system to adjust flash output for natural balance between main subject and ambient background lighting. If type G or D lens is used, distance information is included when calculating flash output. Precision of calculation can be increased for non-CPU lenses by providing lens data (focal length and maximum aperture; 👁 131–134). Not available when spot metering is used.

Standard i-TTL Flash for Digital SLR: Flash output adjusted to bring lighting in frame to standard level; brightness of background is not taken into account. Recommended for shots in which main subject is emphasized at expense of background details, or when exposure compensation is used. Standard i-TTL flash for digital SLR is activated automatically when spot metering is selected.

The following features are available with CLS-compatible flash units:

Flash mode/feature	Speedlight			Advanced Wireless Lighting				
				Commander		Remote		
		SB-800	SB-600	SB-800	SU-800[1]	SB-800	SB-600	SB-R200
i-TTL[2]		✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
AA	Auto aperture	✔[3]	—	✔[4]	✔[5]	✔[4]	—	—
A	Non-TTL auto	✔[3]	—	✔[4]	—	✔[4]	—	—
GN	Range-priority manual	✔	—	—	—	—	—	—
M	Manual	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
RPT	Repeating flash	✔	—	✔	✔	✔	✔	—
REAR	Rear-curtain sync	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
👁	Red-eye reduction	✔	✔	✔	—	—	—	—
Flash Color Information Communication		✔	✔	✔	—	—	—	—
Auto FP High-Speed Sync[5]		✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
FV Lock		✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
AF-assist for multi-area AF[6]		✔	✔	✔	✔	—	—	—
Auto zoom		✔	✔	✔	—	—	—	—

[1] Options shown are only available when SU-800 is used to control other flash units.

[2] Standard i-TTL for Digital SLR is used with spot metering or when selected with Speedlight. When using non-CPU lens with i-TTL Balanced Fill-Flash for Digital SLR, improved precision can be obtained if lens data are specified in **Non-CPU lens data** menu.

[3] Use Speedlight controls to select flash mode.

[4] Auto aperture selected automatically if CPU lens is attached or non-CPU lens data have been specified using **Non-CPU lens data**. If non-CPU lens is used without specifying lens data, non-TTL auto will be selected automatically.

[5] Select **1/250 s (Auto FP)** for Custom Setting e1 (**Flash sync speed**; 201).

[6] Requires CPU lens.

Modeling Illumination

CLS-compatible Speedlights such as the SB-800 and SB-600 emit a modeling flash when the camera depth-of-field preview button is pressed. This feature can be used with Advanced Wireless Lighting to preview the total lighting effect achieved with multiple flash units. Modeling illumination can be turned off using Custom Setting e4 (**Modeling flash**; 202).

SB-80DX, SB-28DX, SB-50DX: D-TTL Flash Control

The type of flash control used with the SB-80DX, SB-28DX, and SB-50DX depends on the lens attached:

Lens	Description
Type G or D lens	**3D Multi-Sensor Balanced Fill-Flash for Digital SLR**: Speedlight emits series of nearly invisible preflashes (monitor preflashes) immediately before main flash. Preflashes reflected from objects in all areas of frame are picked up by five-segment TTL flash control sensor and analyzed in combination with range information from lens to adjust flash output for natural balance between main subject and ambient background lighting. Not available when spot metering is used.
Other lenses	**Multi-Sensor Balanced Fill-Flash for Digital SLR**: As above, except that range information is not included in regulating flash output. Precision of calculation can be increased for non-CPU lenses by providing lens data (focal length and maximum aperture; ☞ 131–134). Not available when spot metering is used.
All types	**Standard TTL Flash for Digital SLR**: Flash output adjusted to bring lighting in frame to standard level; brightness of background is not taken into account. Recommended for shots in which main subject is emphasized at expense of background details, or when exposure compensation is used. Standard TTL flash for digital SLR is activated automatically when spot metering is selected.

The following features are available:

Speedlight Flash mode		SB-80DX SB-28DX	SB-50DX
D-TTL[1]		✔	✔
AA	Auto aperture	✔[2]	—
A	Non-TTL auto	✔[3]	—
M	Manual	✔	✔
	FP high-speed sync	✔[4]	—
⚡⚡⚡	Repeating flash	✔	—
REAR	Rear-curtain sync	✔	✔
👁	Red-eye reduction	✔	—

[1] Standard TTL Flash for Digital SLR is used with spot metering. In other metering modes, flash control depends on lens type (see above).

[2] Select **On** for Custom Setting e3 (**AA flash mode**; ☞ 202).

[3] Select **Off** for Custom Setting e3 (**AA flash mode**; ☞ 202).

[4] Set Speedlight to mode M and select FP high-speed sync manually.

Other Speedlights

The following Speedlights can be used in non-TTL auto and manual modes. If they are set to TTL, the camera shutter-release button will lock and no photographs can be taken.

Speedlight Flash mode		SB-28 SB-26[1]	SB-27[2]	SB-25	SB-24	SB-23 SB-29[3] SB-21B[3] SB-29S[3]	SB-30 SB-22S SB-22 SB-20 SB-16B SB-15	SB-11[4] SB-14[4]
A	Non-TTL auto	✔	✔	✔	✔	—	✔	✔
M	Manual	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
	FP high-speed sync	✔[5]	—	✔[5]	—	—	—	—
ϟϟϟ	Repeating flash	✔	—	✔	✔	—	—	—
REAR	Rear-curtain sync	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
👁	Red-eye reduction	✔	✔	✔	—	—	—	—

1 The SB-26 can be set to remote mode for wireless remote flash photography. When the wireless remote selector is set to D, shutter speed will be set to under 1/200 s.

2 When an SB-27 is mounted on the D2Xs, the flash mode is automatically set to TTL, and the shutter-release will be disabled. Set the SB-27 to A (non-TTL auto flash).

3 Autofocus is only available with AF-Micro lenses (60 mm, 105 mm, 200 mm, or 70–180 mm).

4 When using the SB-11 or SB-14 in A or M mode, use the SU-2 with an SC-13 sync cable. Although SC-11 and SC-15 sync cables can be used, the flash-ready indicator will not appear in the viewfinder and shutter speed will not be adjusted automatically.

5 Set Speedlight to mode M and select FP high-speed sync manually.

Use Only Nikon Flash Accessories

Use only Nikon Speedlights. Negative voltages or voltages over 250 V applied to the accessory shoe could not only prevent normal operation, but damage the sync circuitry of the camera or flash. Before using a Nikon Speedlight not included in the list on these pages, contact a Nikon-authorized service representative for more information.

ISO Auto

If a Speedlight is used when Custom Setting b1 (**ISO auto**) is on, ISO sensitivity will be fixed at the value selected by the user.

Flash Sync Modes

The D2Xs supports the following flash sync modes:

Flash sync mode	Description
⚡ Front-curtain sync	This mode is recommended for most situations. In programmed auto and aperture-priority auto modes, shutter speed will automatically be set to values between 1/60 and 1/250 s (1/60 to 1/8,000 s with Auto FP High-Speed Sync).
⚡SLOW Slow sync	Flash is combined with speeds as slow as 30 s to capture both subject and background at night or under dim light. This mode is only available in programmed auto and aperture-priority auto exposure modes. Use of tripod is recommended to prevent blurring caused by camera shake.
⚡REAR Rear-curtain sync ⚡SLOW REAR Slow rear-curtain sync	In shutter-priority auto or manual exposure mode, flash fires just before the shutter closes, creating effect of a stream of light behind moving objects. In programmed auto and aperture-priority auto, slow rear-curtain sync is used to capture both subject and background. Use of tripod is recommended to prevent blurring caused by camera shake.
👁⚡ Red-eye reduction	In this mode (available only with SB-series 800, 600, 80DX, 28DX, 28, 27, 26, and 25 Speedlights), red-eye reduction pre-flash lights for approximately one second before main flash. Pupils in subject's eyes to contract, reducing "red-eye" effect sometimes caused by flash.
👁⚡SLOW Red-eye reduction with slow sync	Combines red-eye reduction with slow sync. This mode is only available with SB-series 800, 600, 80DX, 28DX, 28, 27, 26, and 25 Speedlights in programmed auto and aperture-priority auto exposure modes. Use of a tripod is recommended to prevent blurring caused by camera shake.

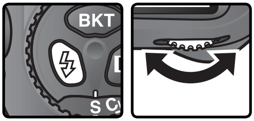
SB-Series 26, 25, and 24 Speedlights

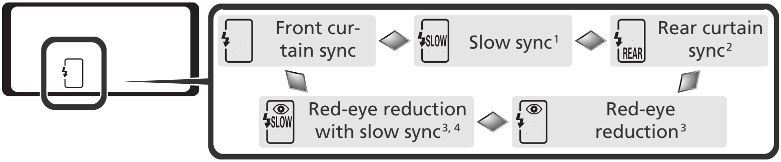
Front- and rear-curtain sync modes for SB-series 26, 25, and 24 Speedlights are set using the sync mode selector on the optional Speedlight. Camera red-eye reduction settings take priority over mode selected with SB-26 and SB-25.

Studio Flash Systems

Rear-curtain sync can not be used with studio flash systems, as the correct synchronization can not be obtained.

To choose the flash sync mode, press the ⚡ button and rotate the main command dial until the desired flash sync mode is selected in the top control panel:





1 Available only in exposure modes **P** and **A**. In modes **S** and **M**, ⚡ (front-curtain sync) is selected when ⚡ button is released.
2 In exposure modes **P** and **A**, flash-sync mode will be set to ⚡SLOW REAR (slow rear-curtain sync) when the ⚡ button is released.
3 👁 icon blinks if Speedlight does not support red-eye reduction.
4 Red-eye reduction with slow sync is available only in exposure modes **P** and **A**. In modes **S** and **M**, ⚡👁 (red-eye reduction) is selected when the ⚡ button is released.

Shutter Speed and Aperture

Shutter speed and aperture can be set as follows when a Speedlight is used:

Exposure mode	Shutter speed	Aperture	🕮
Programmed auto	Set automatically by camera[1, 2]	Set automatically by camera	88
Shutter-priority auto	1/250 s–30 s[2]		90
Aperture-priority auto	Set automatically by camera[1, 2]	Value selected by user[3]	92
Manual	1/250 s–30 s[2]		94

1 Set automatically in the range 1/250 s–1/60 s, or 1/250 s–30 s at flash sync settings of slow sync, slow rear-curtain sync, and red-eye reduction with slow sync.
2 If **1/250 s (Auto FP)** is selected for Custom Setting e1 (**Flash sync speed**) when an optional SB-800 or SB-600 Speedlight is used, shutter speeds may be as fast as 1/8,000 s.
3 Flash range varies with aperture. When setting aperture in exposure modes **A** and **M**, consult the table of flash ranges provided with optional Speedlight.

e1—Flash Sync Speed (🕮 201)

This option can be used to enable Auto FP High-Speed Sync or limit the fastest sync speed to a speed slower than 1/250 s. To fix shutter speed at the sync speed limit in exposure modes **S** and **M**, select the setting after the slowest possible shutter speed (30 s or bulb). An X will be displayed in the flash sync indicator in the top control panel.

e2—Flash Shutter Speed (🕮 201)

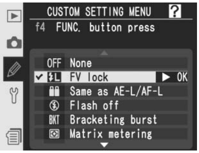
This option can be used to limit the slowest shutter speed possible when using an optional Speedlight in programmed auto and aperture-priority auto exposure modes.

FV Lock

This feature is used to lock flash output, allowing photographs to be recomposed without changing the flash level and ensuring that flash output is appropriate to the subject even when the subject is not positioned in the center of the frame. Flash output is adjusted automatically for any changes in ISO sensitivity, aperture, and Speedlight zoom head position. FV lock is available with CLS compatible flash units only.

To use FV lock:

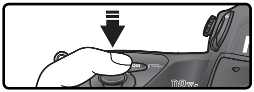
1 Select **FV lock** for Custom Setting f4 (**FUNC. button**; 208).

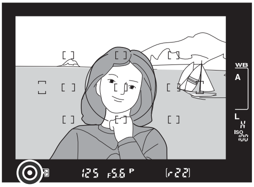

CUSTOM SETTING MENU
f4 FUNC. button press
OFF None
✓ ⚡L FV lock ▶ OK
Same as AE-L/AF-L
Flash off
BKT Bracketing burst
Matrix metering

2 Mount an SB-800 or SB-600 Speedlight or SU-800 wireless Speedlight commander on the camera accessory shoe.

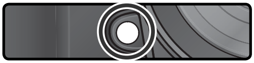
3 Turn the Speedlight on and set the flash mode to TTL or AA (see the Speedlight instruction manual for details).

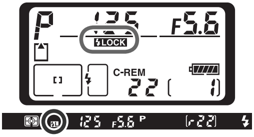
4 Position the subject in the center of the frame and press the shutter-release button halfway to focus.



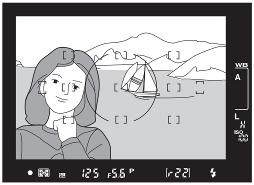


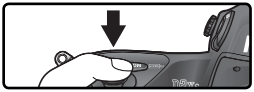
5 Press the camera FUNC. button. The Speedlight will emit a monitor preflash to determine the appropriate flash level. Flash output will be locked at this level and FV lock icons (⚡LOCK and ⚡L) will appear in the control panel and viewfinder.



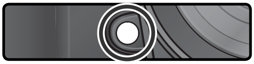


6 Recompose the photograph and press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down to shoot. If desired, additional pictures can be taken without releasing FV lock.





7 Press the camera FUNC. button to release FV lock and confirm that the FV lock icons (⚡LOCK and ⚡L) are no longer displayed in the control panel and viewfinder.



Metering

The metering areas for FV lock are as follows:

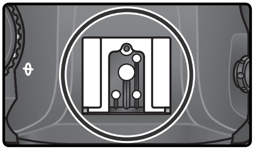
Speedlight	Flash mode	Metered area
Stand-alone flash unit	TTL	5-mm circle in center of frame
	AA	Area metered by Speedlight exposure meter
Used with other flash units (Advanced Wireless Lighting)	TTL	Entire frame
	AA	Area metered by Speedlight exposure meter
	AA (master flash)	

Flash Contacts and Indicators

The D2Xs is equipped with an accessory shoe for attaching Speedlights directly to the camera and a sync terminal that allows Speedlights to be connected via a sync cable. When a Speedlight is connected, the flash-ready indicator in the viewfinder shows whether the flash is fully charged and ready for use.

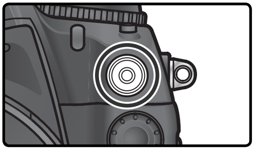
The Accessory Shoe

SB-series Speedlights, including the SB-800, 600, 80DX, 28DX, 50DX, 27, 23, 22s, and 29s, can be mounted directly on the camera accessory shoe without a sync cable. The accessory shoe is equipped with a safety lock for Speedlights with a locking pin (e.g., SB-series 80DX and 27).

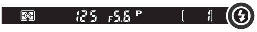


The Sync Terminal

A sync cable can be connected to the sync terminal as required. Do not connect another Speedlight via a sync cable when performing rear-curtain sync flash photography with an SB-series Speedlights such as the 800, 600, 80DX, 28DX, 50DX, 27, 23, 22s, or 29s mounted on the camera accessory shoe.



The Flash-Ready Indicator



When an SB-series Speedlight such as the 800, 600, 80DX, 28DX, 50DX, 27, 23, 22s, or 29s is connected, the flash-ready indicator will light when the flash is fully charged and ready for use. If the indicator blinks for approximately three seconds after a photograph is taken in i-TTL or D-TTL modes, the flash has fired at full output and the photograph may be underexposed. Check the results in the monitor. If the photograph is underexposed, adjust the distance to the subject, aperture, or flash range and try again.

Notes on Optional Speedlights

Refer to the Speedlight manual for detailed instructions. If the Speedlight supports i-TTL or D-TTL flash control, refer to the entry for cameras that support the Creative Lighting System (CLS) or for digital SLR cameras in the table of camera types.

If Auto FP High-Speed Sync is not used, the shutter will synchronize with an external flash at speeds of 1/250 s or slower.

If the flash-ready indicator blinks for about three seconds after a photograph is taken with i-TTL or D-TTL flash control, the flash has fired at full power and the photograph may be underexposed.

The SB-28DX displays exposure in increments of ⅓ EV. If the camera is set to control exposure in increments of ½ EV using Custom Setting b2, the SB-28DX exposure display will not show the correct ISO value. The actual exposure value is not affected.

i-TTL and D-TTL flash control can be used to adjust flash output at ISO sensitivity settings between 100 and 800. At settings over ISO 800, the desired results may not be achieved at some ranges or aperture settings.

The AF-assist illuminator on CLS-compatible Speedlights will only light if all of the following conditions are met: focus mode is set to single-servo auto, an AF-Nikkor lens is used, the subject is poorly lit, and the center focus area is selected or dynamic-area AF is used in combination with closest-subject priority.

In programmed auto, the maximum aperture (minimum f/-number) is limited according to ISO sensitivity, as shown below:

Maximum aperture at ISO equivalent of:									
100	125	160	200	250	320	400	500	640	800
4	4.2	4.5	4.8	5	5.3	5.6	6	6.3	6.7

For each one-step increase in ISO sensitivity (e.g., from 200 to 400), aperture is stopped down by half an f/-stop. If the maximum aperture of the lens is smaller than given above, the maximum value for aperture will be the maximum aperture of the lens.

When an SC-series 17, 28, or 29 sync cable is used for off-camera flash photography, correct exposure may not be achieved in i-TTL or D-TTL mode. We recommend that you choose spot metering to select standard i-TTL or D-TTL flash control. Take a test shot and view the results in the monitor.

In i-TTL or D-TTL mode, use the flash panel or bounce adapter provided with your Speedlight. Do not use other panels such as diffusion panels, as this may produce incorrect exposure.

D-TTL flash control can not be used for multi-flash photography.

Overlay/Multiple Exposure

Combining Multiple Exposures in a Single Frame

The following options are available for combining multiple exposures in a single frame:

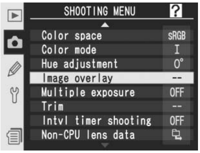
- **Image overlay**: two existing RAW photographs are combined to form a single picture which is saved separately from the originals. The originals must be on the same memory card.
- **Multiple exposure**: a series of two to ten exposures is recorded as a single photograph. The individual exposures are not saved separately.

Image Overlay

Overlays are created using the **Image overlay** option in the shooting menu.

1 The new picture is saved at current image quality and size settings. Before creating an overlay, set image quality and size (☞ 45).

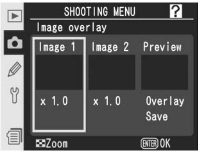
2 Highlight **Image overlay** in the shooting menu (☞ 168) and press the multi selector to the right.



SHOOTING MENU

Color space SRGB
Color mode I
Hue adjustment 0°
Image overlay --
Multiple exposure OFF
Trim --
Intvl timer shooting OFF
Non-CPU lens data

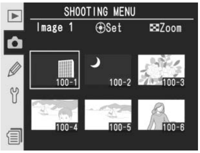
A preview will be displayed with **Image 1** highlighted.



SHOOTING MENU
Image overlay

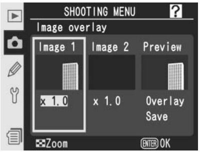
Image 1 x 1.0
Image 2 x 1.0
Preview Overlay Save

3 Press the ENTER button to view the RAW images on the memory card. Press the multi selector left or right to highlight images. To zoom in on the highlighted image, press the ⊞ button.



SHOOTING MENU
Image 1

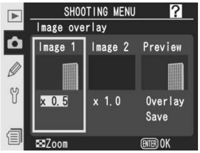
4 Press the ENTER button to select the highlighted image and return to the preview display. The selected image will appear as **Image 1**.



SHOOTING MENU
Image overlay

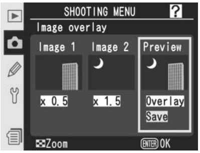
Image 1 x 1.0
Image 2 x 1.0
Preview Overlay Save

5 Press the multi selector up or down to select a value for gain between 0.1 and 2.0. The default value is 1.0; selecting 0.5 cuts gain in half, while selecting 2.0 doubles gain. The effects of gain are visible in the preview image.



6 Press the multi selector left or right to highlight **Image 2**. Repeat steps 3–5 to select the second image and adjust gain.

7 Press the multi selector left or right to highlight **Overlay** and press the ENTER button to display a confirmation dialog (to save the new image without displaying the confirmation dialog, highlight **Save** and press the ENTER button). Press the ENTER button to save the new image, or the ⊠ button to return to the preview dialog.



Selecting Photographs for Image Overlay

Only RAW photographs taken with the D2Xs can be selected for image overlay. Other images are not displayed in the thumbnail list. The two originals must be the same size: if **On** is selected for **Hi-speed crop**, only RAW photographs taken with high-speed crop on will be displayed; if **Off** is selected, only RAW photographs taken with high-speed crop off will be displayed (👁 41). Hidden images are not displayed and can not be selected.

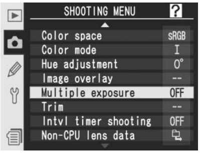
Image Overlay

The new image is recorded at current image quality, image size, and file name settings under a file name assigned by adding one to the largest file number in the current folder. White balance, sharpening, color space, color mode, and hue settings are copied from the photograph selected for **Image 1**, as are the date of recording, metering, shutter speed, aperture, exposure mode, exposure compensation, focal length, orientation, and other photo information. Voice memos are not copied and must be recorded separately for the new image.

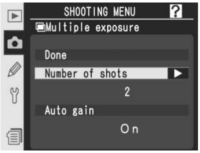
Multiple Exposure

To create a multiple exposure:

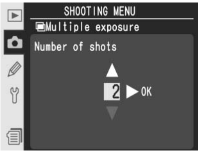
1 Highlight **Multiple exposure** in the shooting menu (☞ 168) and press the multi selector to the right.


SHOOTING MENU
Color space SRGB
Color mode I
Hue adjustment 0°
Image overlay --
Multiple exposure OFF
Trim --
Intvl timer shooting OFF
Non-CPU lens data

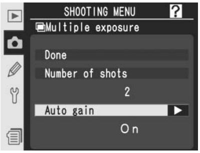
2 Press the multi selector up or down to highlight **Number of shots** and press the multi selector to the right.


SHOOTING MENU
Multiple exposure
Done
Number of shots
2
Auto gain
On

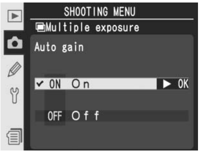
3 Press the multi selector up or down to choose the number of exposures that will be combined to form a single photograph. Press the multi selector to the right to return to the multiple exposure menu.


SHOOTING MENU
Multiple exposure
Number of shots
2
OK

4 Press the multi selector up or down to highlight **Auto gain** and press the multi selector to the right.

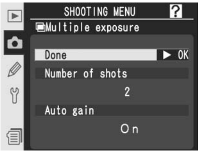

SHOOTING MENU
Multiple exposure
Done
Number of shots
2
Auto gain
On

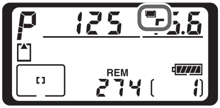
5 Press the multi selector up or down to highlight one of the following options and then press the multi selector to the right.


SHOOTING MENU
Multiple exposure
Auto gain
✓ ON On
OK
OFF Off

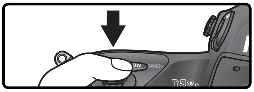
Option	Description
On (default)	Gain adjusted according to number of exposures actually recorded (gain for each exposure is set to ½ for 2 exposures, ⅓ for 3 exposures, etc.).
Off	Gain is not adjusted when recording multiple exposure.

6 Press the multi selector up or down to highlight **Done** and press the multi selector to the right. A ▭ icon will be displayed in the top control panel.

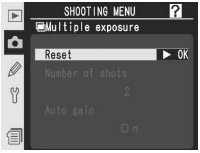

SHOOTING MENU
?
Multiple exposure
Done ▶ OK
Number of shots
2
Auto gain
On


P
125
5.6
REM
274
1

7 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot. In continuous high-speed or continuous low-speed mode (☞ 43), the camera will record all exposures in a single burst. In single-frame shooting mode, one photograph will be taken each time the shutter-release button is pressed; continue shooting until all exposures have been recorded. Shooting will end automatically if:

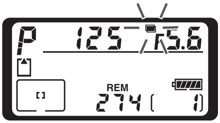


- No operations are performed for 30 s during shooting, or for 30 s after the monitor has turned off during playback or menu operations
- The user selects **Reset** or **Cancel** in the multiple exposure menu and presses the multi selector to the right
- The camera is turned off
- The battery is exhausted
- Pictures are deleted


SHOOTING MENU
?
Multiple exposure
Reset ▶ OK
Number of shots
2
Auto gain
On

If shooting ends before the specified number of exposures have been taken, a multiple exposure will be created from the exposures that have been recorded to that point. If **Auto gain** is on, gain will be adjusted to reflect the number of exposures actually recorded. To end shooting without creating a multiple exposure, press the 🗑 button while turning the camera off.

The ▭ icon will blink until shooting ends. When shooting ends, multiple exposure mode will end and the ▭ icon will no longer be displayed. Repeat steps 1–7 to take additional multiple exposures.


P
125
F5.6
REM
274
1

Exchanging Memory Cards
Do not remove or replace the memory card while recording a multiple exposure.

Photo Info
The information listed in the playback photo information display (including date of recording and camera orientation) is for the first shot in the multiple exposure.

Voice Memos
The camera stores only the last voice memo created during a multiple exposure.

Auto Meter Off
Unless **No limit** is selected for Custom Setting c3 (**Auto meter-off**; 👁 196) or the camera is powered by an AC adapter, shooting will end and a multiple exposure will be recorded if no operations are performed for 30 s. To prevent the exposure meters from turning off before the 30 s limit has expired, 30 s are added to the auto meter-off delay when shooting starts. The existing meter-off delay is restored when shooting ends.

White Balance (👁 55)
If **Auto** is selected for white balance, white balance will be fixed at a value equivalent to **Direct sunlight** while multiple exposure mode is in effect. Only use **Auto** if the subject is in direct sunlight.

Interval Timer Photography
If interval timer photography is activated before the first exposure is taken, the camera will record exposures at the selected interval until the number of exposures specified in the multiple exposure menu have been taken (the number of shots listed in the interval timer shooting menu is ignored). These exposures will then be recorded as a single photograph and multiple exposure mode and interval timer shooting will end. Note that unless **No limit** is selected for Custom Setting c3 (**Auto meter-off**; 👁 196) or the camera is powered by an AC adapter, shooting will end automatically if no operations are performed for 30 s; when recording a multiple exposure using the interval timer, choose an interval of less than 30 s, select **No limit** for Custom Setting c3 (**Auto meter-off**; 👁 196), or use an AC adapter. Cancelling multiple exposure cancels interval timer shooting.

Bracketing and Other Settings
Bracketing is cancelled when multiple exposure is selected and can not be restored until shooting has ended. Settings that can not be changed during a multiple exposure can not be selected once the first picture has been taken.

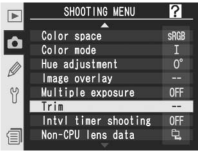
Two Button Reset (👁 136)
Multiple exposure settings are not affected when a two-button reset is performed. Performing a two-button reset does not cancel multiple exposure mode.

Trimming Photographs

Creating Cropped Copies

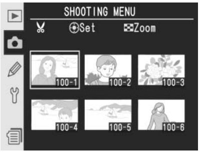
To create a cropped copy of an existing photograph:

1 Highlight **Trim** in the shooting menu (☞ 168) and press the multi selector to the right.

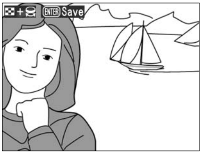


Color space sRGB
Color mode I
Hue adjustment 0°
Image overlay --
Multiple exposure OFF
Trim --
Intvl timer shooting OFF
Non-CPU lens data

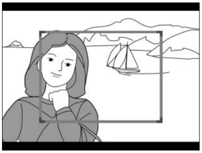
2 Press the multi selector up, down, left, or right to highlight the desired image. To view the highlighted image full frame, press the ⊞ button.



3 Press the center of the multi selector to select the highlighted image. The selected image will be displayed full frame.

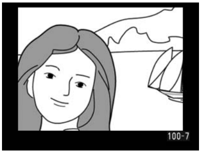


4 Press the ⊞ button and rotate the main command dial to choose the size of the crop. To change the position of the crop, press the multi selector up, down, left, or right while the ⊞ button is pressed.



Trimming

Trimming is available only with photographs taken with the D2Xs. The D2Xs can not be used to tirm photographs taken with other cameras. If a photograph taken at a setting of **NEF (RAW) + JPEG** is selected, trimming will apply to the NEF (RAW) image. Cropped copies can not be selected for trimming.



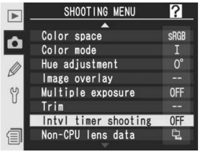
5 Press the ENTER button to create a cropped copy of the image, or press the MENU button to return to the shooting menu without creating a copy. Cropped copies are saved as FINE-quality JPEG images named by adding one to the current file number. Depending on the size of the crop, copies will be 2,540 × 1,920, 1,920 × 1,440, 1,280 × 960, 960 × 720, or 640 × 480 pixels in size. Cropped copies have the same white balance, shooting data, and image optimization settings as the original. Camera orientation (167) is not copied to the new file, with the result that all cropped copies are displayed in “wide” (landscape) orientation during playback. Any voice memos associated with the original are not copied.

Interval Timer Photography

Taking Photographs at Preset Intervals

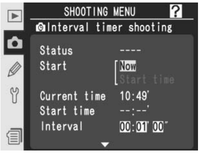
The D2Xs is equipped to take photographs automatically at preset intervals.

1 Highlight **Intvl timer shooting** in the shooting menu (📖 168) and press the multi selector to the right.



SHOOTING MENU
Color space SRGB
Color mode I
Hue adjustment 0°
Image overlay --
Multiple exposure OFF
Trim --
Intvl timer shooting OFF
Non-CPU lens data

2 Press the multi selector left or right to highlight options and press the multi selector up or down to change interval timer settings. The following options are available:



SHOOTING MENU
Interval timer shooting
Status ----
Start Now / Start time
Current time 10:49'
Start time --:--'
Interval 00:01'00"

Option	Description
Start	Choose starting for interval timer photography from: • **Now**: Shooting begins about 3 s after this option is selected • **Start time**: Shooting begins at **Start time**
Start time	Enter start time for interval timer photography when **Start time** is selected for **Start**. Press multi selector left or right to highlight starting hour or minute, press up or down to change. Not available when **Now** is selected for **Start**.
Interval	Enter time between shots. Press multi selector left or right to highlight hour, minute, or second, press up or down to change. Note that camera will not be able to take photographs at specified interval if interval is shorter than shutter speed or time required to record images.
Select intvl × no. of shots	Choose number of intervals and number of shots taken at each interval. Press multi selector left or right to highlight number of intervals or number of shots, press up or down to change. Total number of shots that will be taken appears to right.
Remaining (intvl × shots)	Shows number of intervals and total shots remaining in current interval program. This item can not be edited.
Start	Choose **Off** to exit without starting interval timer. To start interval timer, select **On** and press ENTER. Shooting will start at selected start time and will continue for specified number of intervals.

3 Highlight **Start** at the bottom of the interval timer menu and press the multi selector up or down to select **On**, then press the ENTER button. The first series of shots will be taken at the specified starting time. Shooting will continue at the selected interval until all shots have been taken. If shooting can not proceed at current settings (for example, if a shutter speed of bulb is currently selected in manual exposure mode, or the starting time is less than one minute from the current time), a warning will appear and the interval timer menu will be displayed again.

Use of a tripod is recommended.

✓ Take a Test Shot

Before beginning interval timer photography, take a test shot at current settings and view the results in the monitor. Remember that the camera will focus before each shot—no shots will be taken if the camera is unable to focus in single-servo AF.

Use a Reliable Power Source

To ensure that shooting is not interrupted, be sure the battery is fully charged. If in doubt, charge the battery before shooting or use an optional EH-6 AC adapter.

Check the Time

Before choosing a starting time, select **World Time** in the setup menu and make sure that the camera clock is set to the correct time and date (18).

Out of Memory

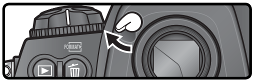
If the memory card is full, the interval timer will remain active but no pictures will be taken. Delete some pictures or turn the camera off and insert another memory card. When the camera is turned on, interval timer photography will be paused. See "Pausing Interval Timer Photography" on the following page for information on resuming interval timer photography.

Bracketing

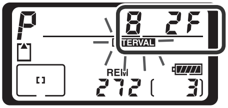
Adjust bracketing settings before starting interval timer photography. If exposure and/or flash bracketing is active while interval timer photography is in effect, the camera will take the number of shots in the bracketing program at each interval, regardless of the number of shots specified in the interval timer menu. If white balance bracketing is active while interval timer photography is in effect, the camera will take the number of shots specified in the interval timer menu and process each shot to create the number of copies specified in the bracketing program.

The Viewfinder Eyepiece

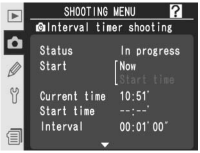
In exposure modes other than manual, close the viewfinder eyepiece shutter to prevent light entering via the viewfinder from interfering with exposure.



During Shooting



During interval timer photography, the **INTERVAL** icon in the top control panel will blink. Immediately before the next shooting interval begins, the shutter speed display will show the number of intervals remaining, and the aperture display will show the number of shots remaining in the current interval. At other times, the number of intervals remaining and the number of shots in each interval can be viewed by pressing the shutter-release button halfway (once the button is released, the shutter speed and aperture will be displayed until the exposure meters turn off).



Interval timer shooting

Status In progress
Start Now / Start time
Current time 10:51'
Start time --:--'
Interval 00:01' 00"

To view current interval timer settings, select **Intvl timer shooting** between shots. While interval timer photography is in progress, the interval timer menu will show the starting time, the current time, the shooting interval, the selected number of intervals and number of shots, and the number of intervals and shots remaining. None of these items can be changed while interval timer photography is in progress.

During Shooting

Shooting and menu settings can be adjusted freely while interval timer photography is in progress. Note the following:

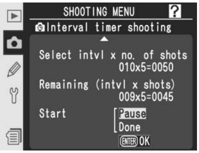
- Performing a two-button reset (👁 136) or changing bracketing settings (👁 100) will cancel interval timer photography.
- If shutter speed is set to bulb (manual exposure mode) after the timer has started, subsequent photographs will be taken at a shutter speed of ⅓ s.
- The monitor will turn off about four seconds before each interval.
- If voice memos are recorded automatically after shooting, voice memos will end two seconds before the next photograph is taken.

Maximum shots

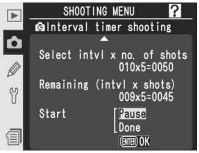
If the number of shots per interval is greater than the limit specified in Custom Setting d2 (**Maximum shots**), only the number of shots specified in Custom Setting d2 will be taken at each interval.

Pausing Interval Timer Photography

To pause interval timer photography:


SHOOTING MENU
Interval timer shooting
Select intvl x no. of shots 010x5=0050
Remaining (intvl x shots) 009x5=0045
Start Pause
Done
ENTER OK

1 Press the multi selector left or right to highlight **Start** at the bottom of the interval timer menu.


SHOOTING MENU
Interval timer shooting
Select intvl x no. of shots 010x5=0050
Remaining (intvl x shots) 009x5=0045
Start Pause
Done
ENTER OK

2 Press the multi selector up or down to select **Pause** and press the ENTER button.

Interval time photography can also be paused by:

- Pressing the ENTER button between intervals.
- Turning the camera off (if desired, the memory card can be replaced while the camera is off). Interval timer photography will be paused when the camera is turned on.

When shooting is paused, the start time will be reset to **Now**. A new starting time can be selected as described in Step 2 of "Interval Timer Photography" (☞ 125). The interval, number of intervals, and number of shots can not be changed. If interval timer photography is paused during shooting, any shots remaining in the current interval will be cancelled.

1 Press the multi selector left or right to highlight **Start** at the bottom of the interval timer menu (see above).

2 Press the multi selector up or down to select **Restart** and press the ENTER button.

No Photograph

Photographs will not be taken if the self-timer is in operation or the previous photograph has yet to be taken, the memory buffer or memory card is full, or the camera is unable to focus in single-servo AF (note that the camera focuses again before each shot).

Multiple Exposure

Interval timer shooting can be used to create a multiple exposure (☞ 120).

Interrupting Interval Timer Photography

To interrupt interval timer photography:

1. Press the multi selector left or right to highlight **Start** at the bottom of the interval timer menu (see previous page).
2. Press the multi selector up or down to select **Done** and press the ENTER button.

Interval timer photography will also be interrupted if:

- A two button reset is performed (👁 136).
- **Reset shooting menu** is selected in the shooting menu (👁 171).
- Bracketing settings are changed (👁 100).
- The battery is exhausted.

Normal shooting will resume when interval timer photography ends.

Shooting Mode

Regardless of the shooting mode selected, the camera will take the specified number of shots at each interval. In **CH** (continuous high speed) mode, photographs will be taken at a rate of five shots per second (eight shots per second when high-speed crop is on). In **S** (single frame), **CL** (continuous low-speed), and **M-UP** (mirror up) modes, photographs will be taken at the rate chosen for Custom Setting d1 (**Shooting speed**; 👁 197). In ⏲ (self-timer) mode, the shutter-release delay applies to each photograph taken. In **M-UP** mode, the mirror will be raised automatically immediately before each shot.

Shooting Menu Banks

Changes to interval timer settings apply to all shooting menu banks (👁 169). If shooting menu settings are reset using the **Reset shooting menu** item in the shooting menu (👁 171), interval timer settings will be reset as follows:

- Start time: **Now**
- Interval: 00:01´:00˝
- Number of intervals: 1
- Number of shots: 1
- Start: **Off**

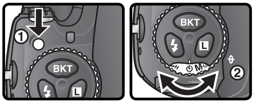
Self-Timer Mode

Delaying Shutter Release

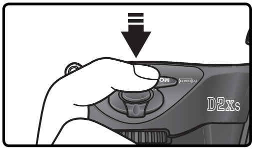
The self-timer can be used to reduce camera shake or for self-portraits. To use the self-timer:

1. Mount the camera on a tripod (recommended) or place the camera on a stable, level surface.

2. Press the shooting mode dial lock release and rotate the shooting mode dial to select ⏲ (self-timer mode).

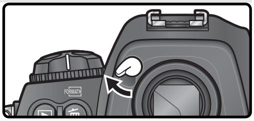


3. Frame the photograph and focus. If autofocus is in effect, be sure not to block the lens when activating the self-timer. In single-servo autofocus (👁 74), photographs can only be taken if the in-focus (●) indicator appears in the viewfinder.

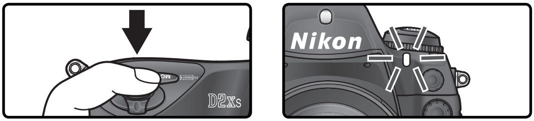


✎ Close the Viewfinder Eyepiece Shutter

In exposure modes other than manual, close the viewfinder eyepiece shutter after focusing. This prevents light entering via the viewfinder from interfering with exposure.



4. Press the shutter-release button all the way down to start the self-timer. The self-timer lamp will start to blink, stopping two seconds before the photograph is taken.



To turn the self-timer off before a photograph is taken, turn the mode dial to another setting.

✎ bu L b

In self-timer mode, a shutter speed of bu L b is equivalent to approximately ⅓ s.

CSM c4—Self-timer (👁 196)

Self-timer delay can be set to 2 s, 5 s, 10 s (the default setting), or 20 s.

By specifying lens data (lens focal length and maximum aperture), the user can gain access to a variety of CPU lens functions when using a non-CPU lens. If the focal length of the lens is known:

- Automatic power zoom can be used with attached Speedlights
- Lens focal length is listed (with an asterisk) in the playback photo info display

When the maximum aperture of the lens is known:

- The aperture value is displayed in the top control panel and viewfinder
- Flash level is adjusted for changes in aperture
- Aperture is listed (with an asterisk) in the playback photo info display

Specifying both the focal length and maximum aperture of the lens:

- Enables color matrix metering (note that it may be necessary to use center-weighted or spot metering to achieve accurate results with some lenses, including Reflex-Nikkor lenses)
- Improves the precision of center-weighted and spot metering, i-TTL Balanced Fill-Flash for Digital SLR, and Multi-Sensor Balanced Fill-Flash for Digital SLR

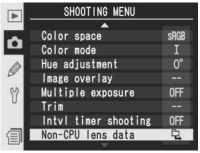
Specifying Lens Focal Length

Lens focal length can be specified using the **Non-CPU lens data** option in the shooting menu or by pressing the FUNC. button and rotating the main command dial. The following settings are available:

- 6–45 mm: 6, 8, 13, 15, 16, 18, 20, 24, 25, 28, 35, 43, and 45 mm
- 50–180 mm: 50, 55, 58, 70, 80, 85, 86, 100, 105, 135, and 180 mm
- 200–4000 mm: 200, 300, 360, 400, 500, 600, 800, 1000, 1200, 1400, 1600, 2000, 2400, 2800, 3200, and 4000 mm

The Non-CPU Lens Data Menu

1 Highlight **Non-CPU lens data** in the shooting menu (👁 168) and press the multi selector to the right.

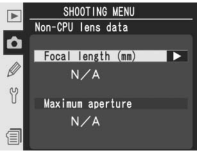


SHOOTING MENU
Color space SRGB
Color mode I
Hue adjustment 0°
Image overlay --
Multiple exposure OFF
Trim --
Intvl timer shooting OFF
Non-CPU lens data

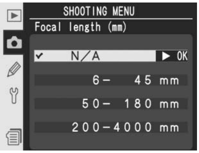
Focal Length Not Listed

If the correct focal length is not listed, choose the closest value greater than the actual focal length of the lens.

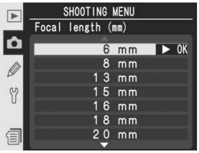
2 Highlight **Focal length (mm)** and press the multi selector to the right.


SHOOTING MENU
Non-CPU lens data
Focal length (mm)
N/A
Maximum aperture
N/A

3 Select the group to which the lens belongs from **6-45mm**, **50-180mm**, **200-4000mm** and press the multi selector to the right.

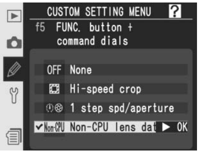

SHOOTING MENU
Focal length (mm)
✔ N/A ▶ OK
6– 45 mm
50– 180 mm
200–4000 mm

4 Select the lens focal length (in mm) and press the multi selector to the right.

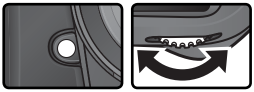

SHOOTING MENU
Focal length (mm)
6 mm ▶ OK
8 mm
13 mm
15 mm
16 mm
18 mm
20 mm

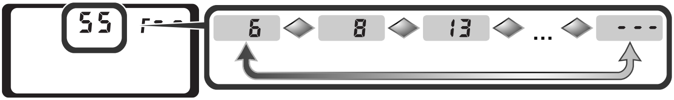
The FUNC. Button

1 Select **Non-CPU lens data** for Custom Setting f5 (**FUNC. + command**; 209).


CUSTOM SETTING MENU ?
f5 FUNC. button + command dials
OFF None
Hi-speed crop
1 step spd/aperture
✔Non-CPU Non-CPU lens dat ▶ OK

2 Press the FUNC. button and rotate the main command dial. Focal length is displayed in the top control panel:





Default Maximum Aperture

Selecting a focal length sets **Maximum aperture** to the last value selected at that focal length.

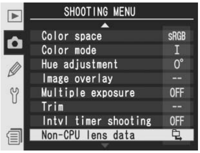
Specifying Maximum Aperture

Lens maximum aperture can be specified using the **Non-CPU lens data** option in the shooting menu or by pressing the FUNC. button and rotating the sub-command dial. The following f/-numbers are available:

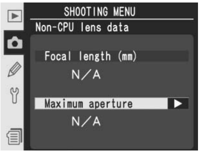
- 1.2, 1.4, 1.8, 2, 2.5, 2.8, 3.3, 3.5, 4, 4.5, 5, 5.6, 6.3, 7.1, 8, 9.5, 11, 13,15, 16, 19, 22

The Non-CPU Lens Data Menu

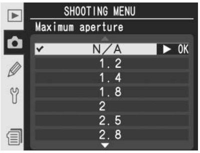
1. Highlight **Non-CPU lens data** in the shooting menu (☞ 168) and press the multi selector to the right.


SHOOTING MENU
Color space sRGB
Color mode I
Hue adjustment 0°
Image overlay --
Multiple exposure OFF
Trim --
Intvl timer shooting OFF
Non-CPU lens data

2. Highlight **Maximum aperture** and press the multi selector to the right.


SHOOTING MENU
Non-CPU lens data
Focal length (mm)
N/A
Maximum aperture ▶
N/A

3. Select the f/-number corresponding to the maximum lens aperture and press the multi selector to the right.

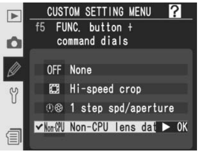

SHOOTING MENU
Maximum aperture
✓ N/A ▶ OK
1. 2
1. 4
1. 8
2
2. 5
2. 8

Zoom Lenses

Lens data are not adjusted when non-CPU lenses are zoomed in or out. After changing the zoom position, select new values for lens focal length and maximum aperture.

The FUNC. Button

1 Select **Non-CPU lens data** for Custom Setting f5 (**FUNC. + command**; 209).



CUSTOM SETTING MENU

f5 FUNC. button + command dials

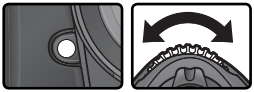
OFF None

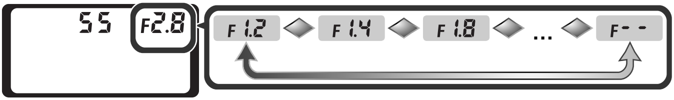
Hi-speed crop

1 step spd/aperture

✓Non-CPU Non-CPU lens dat ▶ OK

2 Press the FUNC. button and rotate the sub-command dial. Maximum aperture is displayed in the top control panel:





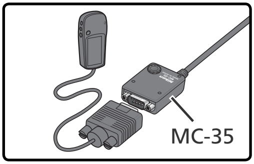
Using a GPS Unit

Recording GPS Data

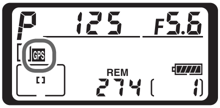
Garmin and Magellan GPS units that conform to version 2.01 of the National Marine Electronics Association NMEA0183 data format can be connected to the camera's ten-pin remote terminal using an MC-35 GPS adapter cord (available separately; 251), allowing information on the camera's current position to be recorded when photographs are taken. Operation has been confirmed with the following devices:

- Garmin eTrex series equipped with a PC interface cable connector
- Magellan SporTrak series equipped with a PC interface cable connector

These devices connect to the MC-35 using a cable with a D-sub 9-pin connector provided by the manufacturer of the GPS device. See the MC-35 instruction manual for details. Before turning the camera on, set the GPS device to NMEA mode (4800 baud).

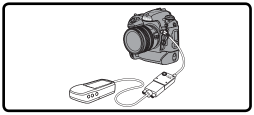


When the camera establishes communication with a GPS device, a GPS icon will be displayed in the top control panel. The exposure meters will not turn off while this icon is displayed. Photo information for pictures taken while the GPS icon is displayed will include an additional page (140) recording the current latitude, longitude, altitude, Coordinated Universal Time (UTC), and compass bearing. If no data are received from the GPS unit for two seconds, the GPS icon will clear from the display and the camera will stop recording GPS information.



Compass Bearing

The compass bearing is only recorded if the GPS device is equipped with a digital compass. Keep the GPS device pointing in the same direction as the lens and at least 20 cm (8 in.) from the camera.

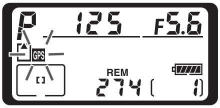


Coordinated Universal Time (UTC)

UTC data is provided by the GPS device and is independent of the camera clock.

GPS Data

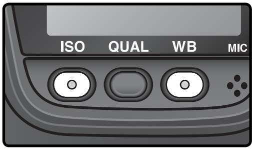
GPS data are only recorded when the GPS icon is displayed. Confirm that the GPS icon is displayed in the top control panel before shooting. A flashing GPS icon indicates that the GPS device is searching for a signal; pictures taken while the GPS icon is flashing will not include GPS data.



Two-Button Reset

Restoring Default Settings

The camera settings listed below can be restored to default values by holding the **WB** and **ISO** buttons down together for more than two seconds (these buttons are marked by a green dot). The control panels turn off briefly while settings are reset. Custom Settings are not affected.



Option	Default
Focus area	Center*
Exposure mode	Programmed auto
Flexible program	Off
Exposure compensation	±0
AE hold	Off†

* If AF-area mode is set to group dynamic-AF, center group will be selected.

† Custom Setting c2 (**AE-L/AF-L**) is unaffected.

Option	Default
Aperture lock	Off
Shutter-speed lock	Off
Bracketing	Off‡
Flash sync mode	Front-curtain sync

‡ Number of shots is reset to zero. Bracketing increment is reset to 1 EV (exposure/flash bracketing) or 1 (white balance bracketing).

The following shooting-menu options will also be reset. Only settings in the bank currently selected using the **Shooting menu bank** option will be reset (👁 169). Settings in the remaining banks are unaffected.

Option	Default
Image quality	**JPEG Normal**
Image size	**Large**

Option	Default
White bal.	**Auto***
ISO sensitivity	**100**

* Fine tuning reset to 0.

Reset Shooting Menu (👁 171)

Other shooting menu options for the current shooting menu bank can be reset by selecting **Yes** for the **Reset shooting menu** option in the shooting menu.

R—Menu Reset (👁 183)

Custom Settings for the current custom settings bank can be restored to default values by selecting **Yes** for Custom Setting R (**Menu Reset**).

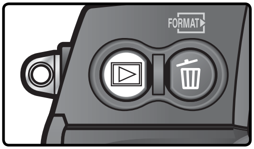
More About Playback

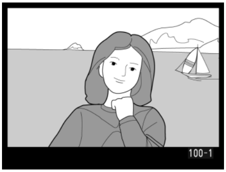
Playback Options

This section details the operations that can be performed during playback, including thumbnail playback, playback zoom, and photo information display.

Single-Image Playback

To play photographs back, press the ▶ button. The most recent photograph will be displayed in the monitor.





To end playback and return to shooting mode, press the ▶ button or press the shutter-release button halfway. To view camera menus (👁 39), press the MENU button.

Using the Multi Selector

The multi selector can be used at any time when the monitor is on. The focus selector lock switch only takes effect when the monitor is off.

Image Review (👁 166)

When **On** is selected for **Image review** in the playback menu, photographs are automatically displayed in the monitor as they are being recorded to the memory card. In single-frame, self-timer, and mirror-up modes, photographs are displayed one at a time as they are taken. In continuous shooting mode, display begins when shooting ends, with the first photograph in the current series displayed. Playback will be interrupted when the shutter-release button is pressed, and resume when the button is released after shooting.

Rotate Tall (👁 167)

This playback menu option controls whether portrait-orientation photographs taken with **On** selected for the **Auto image rotation** option in the setup menu are automatically rotated during playback.

c5—Monitor Off (👁 196)

The monitor will turn off automatically to save power if no operations are performed for the time specified in Custom Setting c5 (**Monitor off**). Press the ▶ button again to return to playback mode.

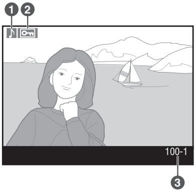
Photo Information

Photo information is superimposed on images displayed in single-image playback. There are up to eight pages of information for each photo. Press the multi-selector left or right to cycle through photo information as follows: (Page 5) ↔ (Page 4) ↔ (Page 3) ↔ Page 2 ↔ Page 1 ↔ (Page 6) ↔ (Page 7) ↔ (Page 8) ↔ (Page 5).

Page 1

1	Voice memo icon	149
2	Protect status	145
3	Folder number/frame number[*]	158

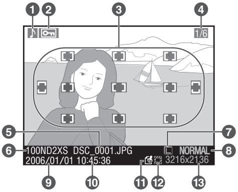
[*] Displayed in yellow if photo was taken with high-speed crop on.



Page 2

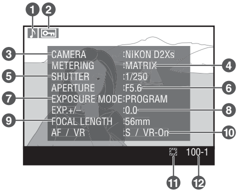
1	Voice memo icon	149
2	Protect status	145
3	Focus brackets[*]	76
4	Frame number/total number of frames	158
5	File name	173
6	Folder name	158
7	Image size	48
8	Image quality	45
9	Date of recording	18
10	Time of recording	18
11	Image authentication	231
12	High-speed crop	41
13	Image size	48

[*] If **Focus area** is selected for **Display mode** (166), active focus area is highlighted in red (in photos taken using single-servo AF with dynamic-area AF, group dynamic-AF, or closest-subject priority, area where focus first locked is highlighted).



Page 3 (Shooting Data 1)[*]

1	Voice memo icon	149
2	Protect status	145
3	Camera name	
4	Metering method	86
5	Shutter speed	87
6	Aperture	87
7	Exposure mode	87
8	Exposure compensation	99
9	Focal length	246
10	Focus mode/vibration reduction (VR)[†]	74, 244
11	High-speed crop	41
12	Folder number/frame number[‡]	158



CAMERA :NIKON D2Xs
METERING :MATRIX
SHUTTER :1/250
APERTURE :F5.6
EXPOSURE MODE:PROGRAM
EXP.+/– :0.0
FOCAL LENGTH :56mm
AF / VR :S / VR-On

[*] Displayed only if **Data** is selected for **Display mode** (166).

[†] Displayed only if photo was taken with VR lens (244).

[‡] Displayed in yellow if photo was taken with high-speed crop on.

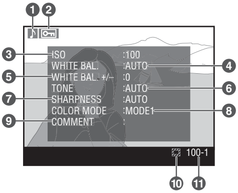
Page 4 (Shooting Data 2)*

	Item	Page
1	Voice memo icon	149
2	Protect status	145
3	ISO sensitivity†	52
4	White balance	55
5	White balance adjustment	57
6	Tone compensation	69
7	Sharpening	68
8	Color mode	72
9	Image comment	217
10	High-speed crop	41
11	Folder number/frame number‡	158

*Displayed only if **Data** is selected for **Display mode** (166).

†Displayed in red if photo was taken with auto ISO on.

‡Displayed in yellow if photo was taken with high-speed crop on.



ISO :100
WHITE BAL. :AUTO
WHITE BAL. +/– :0
TONE :AUTO
SHARPNESS :AUTO
COLOR MODE :MODE1
COMMENT :
100-1

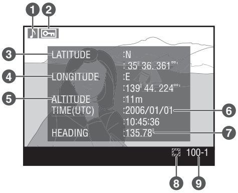
Page 5 (GPS Data)*

	Item	Page
1	Voice memo icon	149
2	Protect status	145
3	Latitude	
4	Longitude	
5	Altitude	
6	Coordinated Universal Time (UTC)	
7	Compass bearing†	
8	High-speed crop	41
9	Folder number/frame number‡	158

*Displayed only if GPS device was used when photo was taken (135).

†Displayed only if GPS device is equipped with digital compass.

‡Displayed in yellow if photo was taken with high-speed crop on.



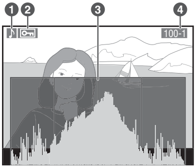
LATITUDE :N
: 35° 36. 361"
LONGITUDE :E
:139° 44. 224"
ALTITUDE :11m
TIME(UTC) :2006/01/01
:10:45:36
HEADING :135.78°
100-1

Page 6 (Histogram)*

	Item	Page
1	Voice memo icon	149
2	Protect status	145
3	Histogram showing the distribution of tones in the image. Horizontal axis corresponds to pixel brightness, vertical axis shows number of pixels of each brightness in image.	
4	Folder number/frame number†	158

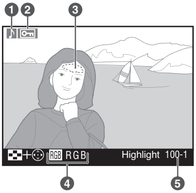
*Displayed only if **Histogram** is selected for **Display mode** (166).

†Displayed in yellow if photo was taken with high-speed crop on.



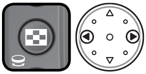
*Page 7 (Highlights)**

1	Voice memo icon	149
2	Protect status	145
3	Image highlights (areas of image that may be overexposed) are marked by a flashing border†	
4	Current channel	
5	Folder number/frame number‡	158



*Displayed only if **Highlights** is selected for **Display mode** (☞ 166).

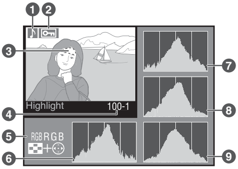
†Highlights can be displayed separately for each color channel. Press multi selector left or right while pressing ⊞ button to cycle through channels as follows: **RGB** (all channels) ↔ **R** (red) ↔ **G** (green) ↔ **B** (blue) ↔ **RGB**.



‡Displayed in yellow if photo was taken with high-speed crop on.

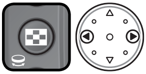
*Page 8 (RGB Histogram)**

1	Voice memo icon	149
2	Protect status	145
3	Image highlights (areas of image that may be overexposed) are marked by a flashing border†	
4	Folder number/frame number‡	158
5	Current channel	
6	Histogram (RGB channel). In all histograms, horizontal axis gives pixel brightness, vertical axis number of pixels.	
7	Histogram (red channel)	
8	Histogram (green channel)	
9	Histogram (blue channel)	



*Displayed only if **RGB histogram** is selected for **Display mode** (☞ 166).

†Highlights can be displayed separately for each color channel. Press multi selector left or right while pressing ⊞ button to cycle through channels as follows: **RGB** (all channels) ↔ **R** (red) ↔ **G** (green) ↔ **B** (blue) ↔ highlight display off ↔ **RGB**.



‡Displayed in yellow if photo was taken with high-speed crop on.

Histograms

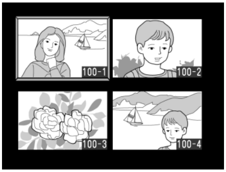
Camera histograms are for use only as a guide and may differ from those displayed in imaging applications.

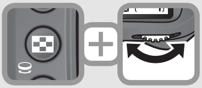
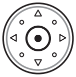
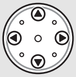
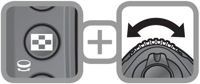
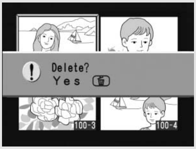
f3—Photo Info/Playback (☞ 207)

The roles of the multi selector buttons can be reversed, so that the left and right buttons display other images and the up and down buttons control photo information.

Viewing Multiple Images: Thumbnail Playback

To display images in "contact sheets" of four or nine images, press the ⊞ button and rotate the main command dial. The following operations can be performed while thumbnails are displayed:



To	Press and/or rotate	Description
Change number of images displayed		Press ⊞ button and rotate main command dial to change the number of images displayed as follows: single image↔four thumbnails↔nine thumbnails↔single image.
Toggle full frame playback		Press center of multi selector to switch back and forth between full frame and thumbnail playback.
Highlight images		Press multi selector up, right, left, or down to highlight thumbnails.
Page through images		Press ⊞ button and rotate sub-command dial to scroll through images a page at a time.
Delete images	🗑	Confirmation dialog will be displayed. Press 🗑 again to delete photo. To exit without deleting photo, press multi selector left or right.  Delete? Yes 🗑
Zoom in on highlighted photo	ENTER (🔍)	Press ENTER for enlarged view of highlighted photo (📖 144).

f1—Center Button > Playback Mode (📖 205)

Instead of toggling between full-frame and thumbnail playback, the center of the multi selector can be used to toggle playback zoom or display a histogram.

To	Press and/or rotate	Description
Record/ play voice memo	🎙	If voice memo has not been recorded for highlighted photo, voice memo will be recorded while 🎙 button is pressed (👁 148). If voice memo has been recorded for highlighted image, pressing 🎙 button will start playback. Press again to pause playback (👁 152).
Change protect status of highlighted photo	🔑	Images marked by 🔑 icon can not be deleted using 🗑 button or **Delete** option in playback menu (note that protected images *will* be deleted when memory card is formatted). To protect image, or to remove protection from protected image, press 🔑 button (👁 145).
Display menus	MENU	Press MENU button to display camera menus (👁 39).
Return to shooting mode	Shutter-release/▶	To end playback and return to shooting mode, press ▶ button or press shutter-release button halfway.

Using the Multi Selector

The multi selector can be used at any time when the monitor is on. The focus selector lock switch only takes effect when the monitor is off.

Image Review (👁 166)

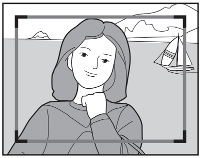
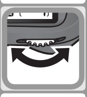
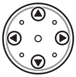
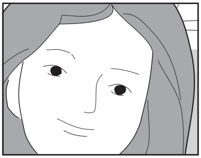
When **On** is selected for **Image review** in the playback menu, photographs are automatically displayed in the monitor as they are being recorded to the memory card. In single-frame and self-timer modes, photographs are displayed one at a time as they are taken. In continuous shooting mode, display begins when shooting ends. Thumbnail playback is only available in continuous shooting mode.

c5—Monitor Off (👁 196)

The monitor will turn off automatically to save power if no operations are performed for the time specified in Custom Setting c5 (**Monitor off**). Press the ▶ button again to return to playback mode.

Taking a Closer Look: Playback Zoom

Press the ENTER button to zoom in on the image displayed in single-image playback or on the image currently highlighted in thumbnail playback. The following operations can be performed while zoom is in effect:

To	Use	Description
Cancel/ resume zoom	ENTER (🔍)	Press ENTER to cancel zoom and return to single-image or thumbnail playback. Press again to zoom image in.
Select area displayed	⊞	Press ⊞ button to display frame showing area currently zoomed in. While ⊞ button is pressed, multi selector can be used to move frame and main command dial can be used to control size of frame—rotate dial counterclockwise to zoom out, clockwise to zoom in to maximum of approximately 27× (large images), 20× (medium images), or 13× (small images). Release ⊞ button to magnify selected area to fill monitor. 
View other images		Rotate main command dial to view same area of other images at current zoom ratio.
View other areas of image		Use multi selector to view area not visible in monitor. Hold multi selector down to scroll rapidly to other areas of frame. 

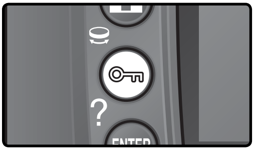
Protecting Photographs from Deletion

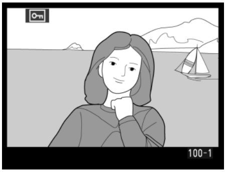
In full-frame, zoom, and thumbnail playback, the ⊶ button can be used to protect photographs from accidental deletion. Protected files can not be deleted using the 🗑 button or the **Delete** option in the playback menu, and have DOS "read-only" status when viewed on a Windows computer. Note that protected images *will* be deleted when the memory card is formatted.

To protect a photograph:

1 Display the image in full-frame playback or highlight it in the thumbnail list.

2 Press the ⊶ button. The photograph will be marked with a ⊶ icon.





To remove protection from the photograph so that it can be deleted, display the photograph or highlight it in the thumbnail list and then press the ⊶ button.

Voice Memos

Changes to the protect status of images also apply to any voice memos that may have been recorded with the images. Voice memo overwrite status can not be set separately.

Removing Protection from All Images

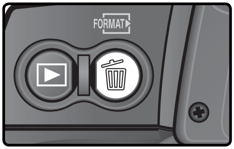
To remove protection from all images in the folder or folders currently selected in the **Playback folder** menu, press the ⊶ and 🗑 buttons together for about two seconds.

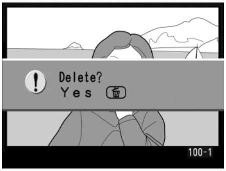
Deleting Individual Photographs

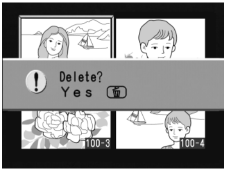
To delete a photograph displayed in single-image or zoom playback, or the photograph highlighted in thumbnail playback, press the 🗑 button. Once deleted, photographs can not be recovered.

1 Display the image or highlight it in the thumbnail list.

2 Press the 🗑 button. A confirmation dialog will be displayed.



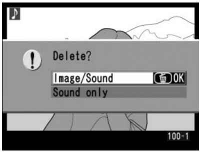




3 To delete the photograph, press the 🗑 button again. To exit without deleting the photograph, press the multi selector left or right.

Voice Memos

If a voice memo has been recorded with the selected image, the confirmation dialog shown at right will be displayed when the 🗑 button is pressed.



- **Image/Sound**: Select this option and press the 🗑 button to delete both photo and voice memo.
- **Sound only**: Select this option and press the 🗑 button to delete only the voice memo.

To exit without deleting either voice memo or photo, press multi selector left or right.

Protected and Hidden Images

Images marked with a 🔑 icon are protected and can not be deleted. Hidden images are not displayed in single-image or thumbnail playback and can not be selected for deletion.

Delete (👁 156)

To delete multiple images, use the **Delete** option in the playback menu.

After Delete (👁 167)

The **After delete** option in the playback menu determines whether the next image or the previous image is displayed after an image is deleted.

Voice Memos

Recording and Playback

The D2Xs is equipped with a built-in microphone, allowing voice memos to be added to photographs. Voice memos can be played back over the camera's built-in speaker.

Recording Voice Memos

Voice memos up to sixty seconds long can be added to photographs using the built-in microphone. In shooting mode, a voice memo can be added to the most recent photograph. In playback mode, voice memos can be added to photographs displayed in single-image playback or selected in the thumbnail list.

1 Ready the camera for recording.

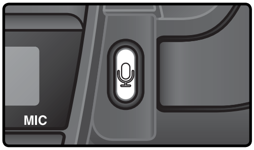
Shooting Mode

At default settings, voice memos can not be recorded in shooting mode. To enable automatic or manual voice memo recording, select the appropriate option for **Voice memo** in the camera setup menu (👁 213). Voice memos can only be added to the last photograph taken.

Playback Mode

Display the photograph to which the memo is to be added (single-image playback) or highlight the photograph in the thumbnail list (thumbnail playback). Only one voice memo can be recorded per image; additional voice memos can not be recorded for images already marked with a ♪ icon.

2 Press and hold the 🎙 button. A voice memo will be recorded while the button is held down (note that no voice memo will be recorded if the 🎙 button is not held down for at least one second).



Automatic Recording (Shooting Mode)

If **On (auto and manual)** is selected for **Voice memo**, a voice memo will be recorded for the last photograph taken when the shutter-release button is released after shooting. Recording will end when the 🎙 button is pressed or after the specified recording time has ended.

Dust Off Ref Photos

Voice memos can not be recorded for Image Dust Off reference data (👁 221).

Interrupting Recording

Recording will end automatically if:

- The MENU button is pressed to display the menus
- The ▶ button is pressed
- The shutter-release button is pressed halfway
- The camera is turned off

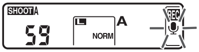
During interval timer photography, recording will end automatically about two seconds before the next photograph is taken.

During Recording

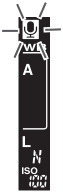
During recording, the 🎙 icons in the rear control panel and viewfinder sidebar will blink. A countdown timer in the rear control panel shows the length of the voice memo that can be recorded (in seconds).

In playback mode, a 🎙 icon is displayed in the monitor during recording.

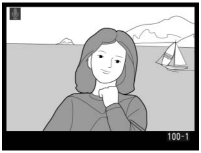
Rear control panel



Viewfinder



Monitor

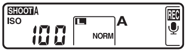


After Recording

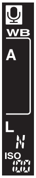
If a voice memo has been recorded for the most recent photograph, a 🎙 icon will be displayed in the rear control panel and viewfinder sidebar.

If a voice memo exists for the photograph currently selected in playback mode, a ♪ icon will be displayed in the monitor.

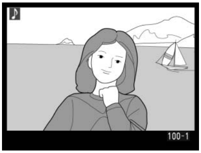
Rear control panel



Viewfinder



Monitor



Voice Memo File Names

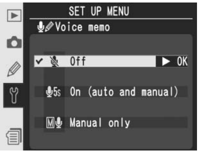
Voice memos are stored as WAV files with names of the form "*xxxxnnnn*.WAV," where "*xxxxnnnn*" is a file name copied from the image with which the voice memo is associated. For example, the voice memo for the image "DSC_0002.JPG" would have the file name "DSC_0002.WAV." Voice memo file names can be viewed on a computer.

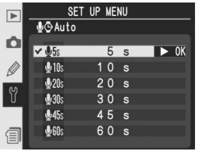
Voice Memo Recording Options

Three setup menu options control voice memo recording: **Voice memo**, **Voice memo overwrite**, and **Voice memo button**.

Voice Memo

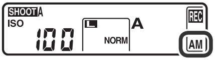
To choose a voice memo option for shooting mode, highlight **Voice memo** in the setup menu (☞ 213) and press the multi selector to the right. The following options are available:


SET UP MENU
Voice memo
✓ Off ▶ OK
5s On (auto and manual)
M Manual only

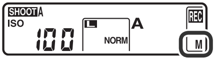
Option	Description
Off (default)	Voice memos can not be recorded in shooting mode.
On (auto and manual)	Selecting this option displays menu shown at right; select maximum recording time from 5, 10, 20, 30, 45, or 60 s. Unless **On** is selected for **Image review** in playback menu, recording will begin when shutter-release button is released after shooting. Recording ends when 🎤 button is pressed or after specified recording time has ended.  SET UP MENU Auto ✓ 5s 5 s ▶ OK 10s 10 s 20s 20 s 30s 30 s 45s 45 s 60s 60 s
Manual only	Memo can be recorded for most recent photograph by pressing and holding 🎤 button (☞ 148).

Voice Memo

The option selected for **Voice memo** is indicated by an icon in the rear control panel.


SHOOT A
ISO
100
NORM
A
REC
AM

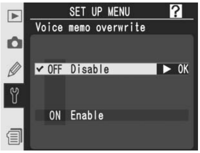
On (auto and manual)


SHOOT A
ISO
100
NORM
A
REC
M

Manual only

Voice Memo Overwrite

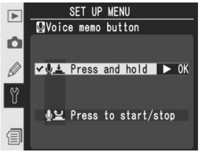
This option controls whether the voice memo for the most recent photograph can be overwritten in shooting mode. Highlight **Voice memo overwrite** in the setup menu (👁 213) and press the multi selector to the right. The following options are available:


SET UP MENU
?
Voice memo overwrite
✓ OFF Disable
▶ OK
ON Enable

Option	Description
Disable (default)	Voice memo can not be recorded in shooting mode if one already exists for most recent image.
Enable	Voice memo can be recorded in shooting mode even if one already exists for most recent image. Existing memo will be deleted and replaced by new memo. Voice memos can not be overwritten in playback mode.

Voice Memo Button

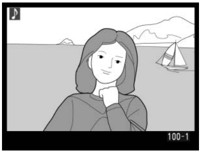
This option controls manual recording. Highlight **Voice memo button** in the setup menu (👁 213) and press the multi selector to the right. The following options are available:

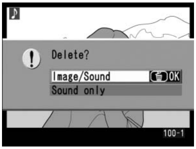

SET UP MENU
🎙Voice memo button
✓ Press and hold
▶ OK
Press to start/stop

Option	Description
Press and hold (default)	Voice memo is recorded while 🎙 button is held down. Recording will end automatically after 60 s.
Press to start/ stop	Recording begins when 🎙 button is pressed and ends when 🎙 button is pressed again. Recording will end automatically after 60 s.

Playing Voice Memos

Voice memos can be played back over the camera's built-in speaker when the associated image is viewed in single-frame playback or highlighted in the thumbnail list. The presence of a voice memo is indicated by an ♪ icon.



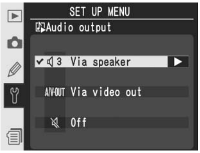
To	Press	Description
Start/end playback	🎙	Press 🎙 to start playback. Playback will end when 🎙 button is pressed again or entire memo has been played back.
Delete voice memo	🗑	 Confirmation dialog will be displayed. Press multi selector up or down to highlight option, press 🗑 to select. • **Image/Sound**: Delete both photo and voice memo. • **Sound only**: Delete voice memo only. To exit without deleting image or voice memo, press multi selector left or right.

Interrupting Playback

Playback will end automatically if:

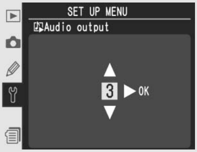
- The MENU button is pressed to display the menus
- The monitor is turned off by pressing the ▶ button or by pressing the shutter-release button halfway
- The camera is turned off
- Another image is displayed (single-image playback) or another thumbnail is highlighted (thumbnail playback)

Voice Memo Playback Options



The **Audio output** option in the setup menu controls whether voice memos are played back over the camera's built-in speaker or by a device to which the camera is connected via the EG-D2 audio/video cable. When sound is played back over the built-in speaker, the **Audio output** option also controls playback volume.

Highlight **Audio output** in the setup menu (☞ 213) and press the multi selector to the right. The following options are available:

Option	Description
Via speaker (default)	Voice memos are played back over built-in speaker. Selecting this option displays menu shown at right. Press multi selector up or down to change volume. Beep will sound when option is selected. Press multi selector to right to make selection and return to setup menu. 
Via VIDEO OUT	Audio signal output to A/V-OUT terminal.
Off	Video memos are not played back. 🔇 icon is displayed when photo for which voice memo exists is viewed in monitor.

Menu Guide

Index to Menu Options

The Playback Menu 156–167
The Shooting Menu 168–178
Custom Settings 179–212
The Setup Menu 213–232

Changes to a variety of camera settings are made with the help of menus that appear in the camera monitor. This chapter covers:

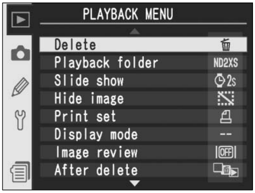
The Playback Menu
The playback menu contains options for managing the images stored on memory cards, and for playing pictures back in automated slide shows.

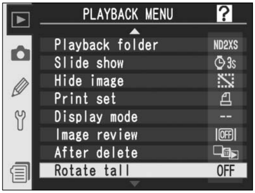
The Shooting Menu
The shooting menu contains advanced shooting options, such as image sharpening and tone compensation.

Custom Settings
The CSM (Custom Settings) menu controls fine details of camera operation.

The Setup Menu
This menu is used for basic camera setup operations, including formatting memory cards and setting the time and date.

The playback menu contains the following options:


PLAYBACK MENU
Delete
Playback folder ND2XS
Slide show 2s
Hide image
Print set
Display mode --
Image review OFF
After delete

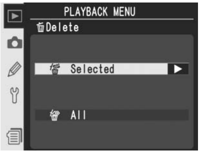

PLAYBACK MENU
?
Playback folder ND2XS
Slide show 3s
Hide image
Print set
Display mode --
Image review OFF
After delete
Rotate tall OFF

Option	👁
Delete	156–157
Playback folder	158
Slide show	159–160
Hide image	161–162
Print set	163
Display mode	166
Image review	166
After delete	167
Rotate tall	167

The playback menu is only displayed if there is a memory card in the camera.

Delete

To display the delete menu, highlight **Delete** and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.


PLAYBACK MENU
Delete
Selected ▶
All

Option	Description
Selected	Delete selected photographs.
All	Delete all photographs.

High-Capacity Memory Cards

If the memory card contains a large number of files or folders and the number of pictures to be deleted is very large, deletion can sometimes take more than half an hour.

Protected and Hidden Images

Images marked with a 🔑 icon are protected and can not be deleted. Hidden images (👁 161) are not displayed in the thumbnail list and can not be selected for deletion.

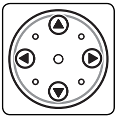
Using the Multi Selector

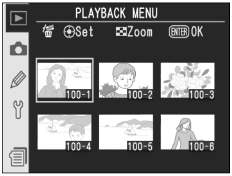
The multi selector can be used at any time when the monitor is on. The focus selector lock switch only takes effect when the monitor is off.

Deleting Selected Photographs: *Selected*

Choosing **Selected** displays the photographs in the folder or folders selected in the **Playback folder** menu (158) as small thumbnail images.

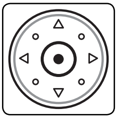
1

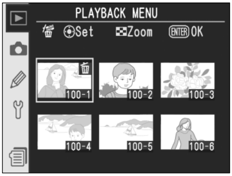



PLAYBACK MENU
Set
Zoom
ENTER OK
100-1
100-2
100-3
100-4
100-5
100-6

Highlight image. (To view highlighted image full screen, press ⊞. Press again to return to thumbnail list.)

2

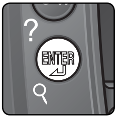


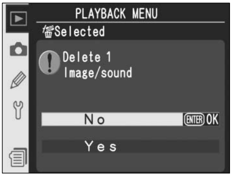

PLAYBACK MENU
Set
Zoom
ENTER OK
100-1
100-2
100-3
100-4
100-5
100-6

Select highlighted image. Selected image marked by 🗑 icon.

3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to select additional pictures. To deselect picture, highlight and press center of multi selector. To exit without deleting pictures, press ENTER button.

4




PLAYBACK MENU
Selected

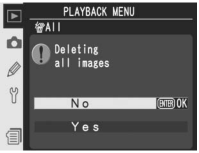
Delete 1
Image/sound

No
ENTER OK
Yes

Confirmation dialog displayed. Press multi selector up or down to highlight option, press ENTER to select.

- **Yes**: delete selected pictures and any associated voice memos
- **No**: exit without deleting images

Deleting All Photographs: *All*


PLAYBACK MENU
All

Deleting
all images

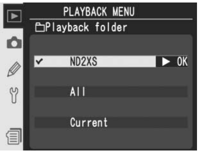
No
ENTER OK
Yes

Choosing **All** displays the confirmation dialog shown at right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press the ENTER button to make a selection.

- **Yes**: delete all images in the folder or folders selected in the **Playback folder** menu (158), together with any associated voice memos. Pictures that are protected or hidden will not be deleted.
- **No**: exit without deleting images.

Playback Folder

To display the playback folder menu, highlight **Playback folder** in the playback menu (156) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.



PLAYBACK MENU
Playback folder
✓ ND2XS ▶ OK
All
Current

Option	Description
ND2XS	Images in all folders created by the D2Xs will be visible during playback.
All	Images in all folders created by cameras that conform to the **D**esign Rule for **C**amera **F**ile System (DCF)—all Nikon digital cameras and most other makes of digital camera—will be visible during playback.
Current	Only images in the current folder will be visible during playback.

Selecting a Folder for Storage

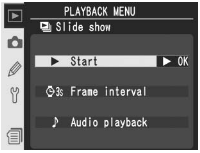
The **Active folder** option in the shooting menu is used to create new folders and to select the folder in which subsequent photographs will be stored (172).

"Current"

If multiple folders are created using the **Active folder**>**New** option in the shooting menu (172), only photographs in the folder selected in the **Active folder** menu will be played back when **Current** is selected for **Playback folder**. To view photographs in other folders, select **ND2XS** or **All**.

Slide Show

To play images back one after the other in an automated "slide show," highlight **Slide show** in the playback menu (☞ 156) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

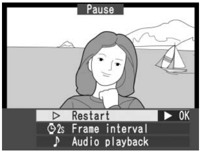


Option	Description
Start	Start slide show.
Frame interval	Choose how long each picture will be displayed.
Audio playback	Display menu of voice memo playback options.

Starting the Slide Show: *Start*

To start the slide show, highlight **Start** and press the multi selector to the right. All photographs in the folder or folders selected in the **Playback folder** menu (☞ 158) will be played back in the order recorded, with a pause between each image. Hidden photographs (☞ 161) will not be played back. The following operations can be performed during a slide show:

To	Press	Description
Go forward or back one frame	▲▼	Press multi selector up to return to previous frame, down to skip to next frame.
View photo info	◀▶	Press multi selector left or right to change photo info displayed during slide show.
Pause	ENTER	Press ENTER to pause slide show (☞ 160).
Exit to playback menu	MENU	Press MENU to end slide show and display playback menu.
Exit to playback mode	▶	Press ▶ to end slide show and return to playback with current image displayed in monitor.
Exit to shooting mode	Shutter release	Press shutter-release button halfway to end slide show, turn monitor off, and return to shooting mode (voice memo playback will not be interrupted).

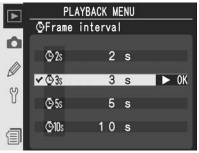

Pause
▷ Restart ▶ OK
2s Frame interval
♪ Audio playback

The dialog shown at right is displayed when the show ends or when the ENTER button is pressed to pause playback. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

- **Restart**: Resume slide show.
- **Frame interval**: Change the length of time each picture is displayed.
- **Audio playback**: Display a menu of voice memo playback options.

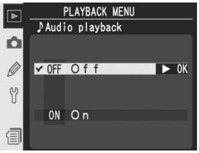
To exit the slide show and return to the playback menu, press the multi selector to the left or press the MENU button.

Changing the Display Interval: *Frame Interval*

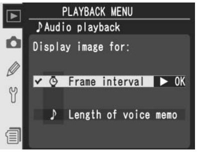

PLAYBACK MENU
Frame interval
2s 2 s
✓ 3s 3 s ▶ OK
5s 5 s
10s 1 0 s

To change the time each image is displayed, highlight **Frame interval** in the **Slide show** or pause menu and press the multi selector right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight the appropriate option and then press the multi selector to the right to return to the previous menu.

Voice Memo Playback Options: *Audio Playback*


PLAYBACK MENU
♪Audio playback
✓ OFF O f f ▶ OK
ON O n

Selecting **Audio playback** in the **Slide show** or pause menu displays the menu shown at right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

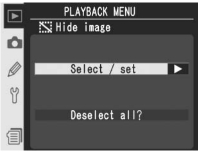
<table>
<tr><th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Off</td><td>Voice memos are not played back during slide shows.</td></tr>
<tr><td>On</td><td>Voice memos are played back during slide shows. Menu shown at right will be displayed; press multi selector up or down to highlight option, press to right select.

PLAYBACK MENU
♪Audio playback
Display image for:
✓ Frame interval ▶ OK
♪ Length of voice memo

• Frame interval: Playback ends when next frame is displayed, even if entire memo has not been played.
• Length of voice memo: Next frame is not displayed until entire memo has been played, even if frame interval is shorter than voice memo.</td></tr>
</table>

Hide Image

The **Hide image** option is used to hide or reveal selected photographs. Hidden images are visible only in the **Hide image** menu, and can only be deleted by formatting the memory card.

Highlight **Hide image** in the playback menu (☞ 156) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press right to make a selection.

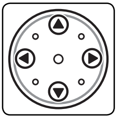

PLAYBACK MENU
Hide image
Select / set ▶
Deselect all?

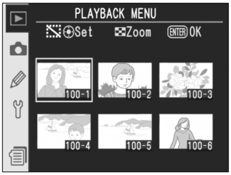
Option	Description
Select/set	Hide or reveal selected photographs.
Deselect all?	Reveal all photographs.

Hiding Selected Photographs: *Select/Set*

Choosing **Select/set** displays the photographs in the folder or folders selected in the **Playback folder** menu (☞ 158) as small thumbnail images.

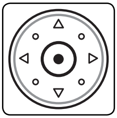
1

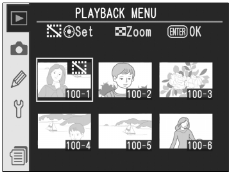



PLAYBACK MENU
Set
Zoom
ENTER OK
100-1
100-2
100-3
100-4
100-5
100-6

Highlight image. (To view highlighted image full screen, press ENTER. Press again to return to thumbnail list.)

2

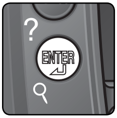


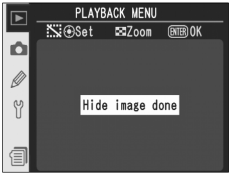

PLAYBACK MENU
Set
Zoom
ENTER OK
100-1
100-2
100-3
100-4
100-5
100-6

Select highlighted image. Selected image marked by ▨ icon.

3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to select additional pictures. To deselect picture, highlight and press center of multi selector. To exit without changing hidden status of pictures, press ENTER button.

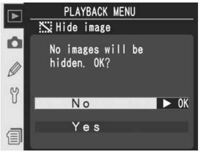
4




PLAYBACK MENU
Set
Zoom
ENTER OK
Hide image done

Complete operation and return to playback menu.

Revealing All Photographs: *Deselect All*



No images will be hidden. OK?

Choosing **Deselect all?** displays the confirmation dialog shown at right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press the ENTER button to make a selection.

- **Yes**: reveal all images in the folder or folders selected in the **Playback folder** menu (👁 158). The monitor will briefly show the message "Hide image done," and then the playback menu will be displayed.
- **No**: exit to the playback menu without changing the hidden status of images.

File Attributes for Hidden Images

Hidden images have "hidden" and "read-only" status when viewed on a Windows computer. In the case of "NEF+JPEG" images, this marking applies to both the NEF (RAW) and JPEG image.

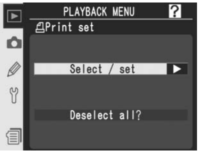
Protected and Hidden Images

Removing protection from an image that is both hidden and protected will simultaneously reveal the image.

Print Set

Print set is used to create a digital "print order" that lists the photographs to be printed, the number of copies, and the information to be included on each print. This information is stored on the memory card in **D**igital **P**rint **O**rder **F**ormat (DPOF). The card can then be removed from the camera and used to print the selected images printed on any DPOF-compatible device.

Highlight **Print set** in the playback menu (👁 156) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.



Option	Description
Select/set	Select photographs for printing.
Deselect all?	Remove all images from print order.

Print Set

Print set will not be available if there is not enough space on the memory card to record the print order. Delete unwanted pictures and try again.

NEF Images

Images created at image quality settings of **NEF (Raw)** (👁 45) can not be selected for printing using this option.

Taking Pictures for Direct Printing

When taking images to be printed without modification, set the **Color space** option in the shooting menu to **sRGB** (👁 70).

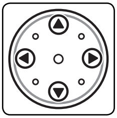
DPOF/PictBridge

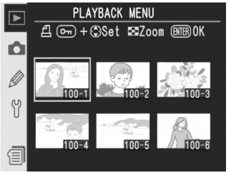
Digital **P**rint **O**rder **F**ormat (DPOF) is an industry-wide standard that allows pictures to be printed from print orders stored on the memory card. Before printing, check that the printer or print service supports DPOF. Pictures selected using **Print set** can also be printed on PictBridge printers via direct USB connection (👁 238). When a PictBridge printer is connected to the camera using the supplied UC-E4 USB cable, a menu will be displayed in the camera monitor; select **Print (DPOF)** to print the current print order. Note that the date and shooting information will not be printed.

Modifying the Print Order: *Select/Set*

Choosing **Select/set** displays the photographs in the folder or folders selected in the **Playback folder** menu (☞ 158) as small thumbnail images.

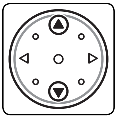
1

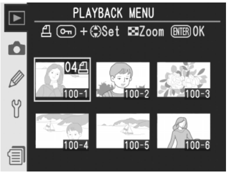



PLAYBACK MENU
⎙ ⊶ +⊕Set ⊞Zoom ENTER OK
100-1
100-2
100-3
100-4
100-5
100-6

Highlight image. (To view highlighted image full screen, press ⊞. Press again to return to thumbnail list.)

2

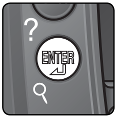


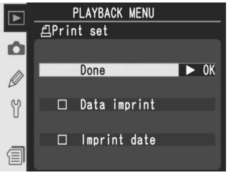

PLAYBACK MENU
⎙ ⊶ +⊕Set ⊞Zoom ENTER OK
04⎙
100-1
100-2
100-3
100-4
100-5
100-6

Press ⊶ button and press multi selector up or down to specify number of prints (up to 99), or press center of multi selector to select image and set number of prints to 1. Selected images are marked by ⎙ icon.

3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to select additional pictures. To deselect picture, highlight and press center of multi selector. To exit without changing print order, press ENTER button.

4



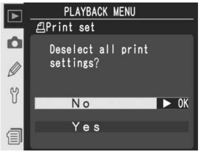

PLAYBACK MENU
⎙Print set
Done ▶ OK
☐ Data imprint
☐ Imprint date

Complete print order and display menu of print options. Press multi selector up or down to highlight option.

- To print shutter speed and aperture on all pictures in print order, highlight **Data imprint** and press multi selector to right. ✔ will appear next to item.
- To print date of recording on all pictures in print order, highlight **Imprint date** and press multi selector to right. ✔ will appear next to item.
- To deselect checked item, highlight and press multi selector to right.

To complete print order and return to playback menu, highlight **Done** and press multi selector to right. To exit without altering print order, press ENTER button.

Removing All Images from the Print Order: *Deselect All*



Deselect all print settings?

Choosing **Deselect all?** displays the confirmation dialog shown at right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press the ENTER button to make a selection.

- **Yes**: remove all images from the print order. The monitor will briefly show the message "Print set done," and then the playback menu will be displayed.
- **No**: exit to the playback menu without changing the print order.

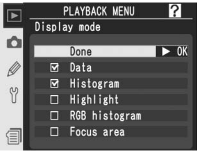
After Creating a Print Order

After creating a print order, do not change the hidden status of images in the print order or use a computer or other device to delete images. Either action could cause problems during printing.

Exif version 2.21

The D2Xs supports Exif (**Ex**changeable **I**mage File **F**ormat for Digital Still Cameras) version 2.21, a standard that allows information stored with photographs to be used for optimal color reproduction when images are output on Exif-compliant printers.

Display Mode



To choose the information listed in the photo-information display (139), highlight **Display mode** in the playback menu (156) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight options, then press to the right to make a selection. A ✔ appears next to selected items; to deselect, highlight and press the multi selector to the right. To return to the playback menu, highlight **Done** and press the multi selector to the right.

Option	Description
Data*	Shooting data appears in photo information display.
Histogram	Histogram appears in photo information display.
Highlights*	Highlight page appears in photo information display.
RGB histogram*	Histogram appears in photo information display.
Focus area	Active focus area (if single-servo AF is used with dynamic-area AF, group dynamic-AF, or closest-subject priority, area where focus first locked) is shown in red in photo information display.

* Default selection.

Image Review

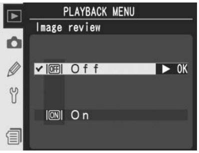
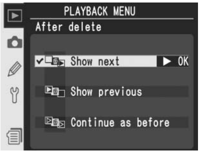


Image review controls whether or not photographs are displayed in the monitor immediately after shooting. Highlight **Image review** in the playback menu (156) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Option	Description
Off	Photographs are not automatically displayed after shooting.
On	Photographs are automatically displayed after shooting.

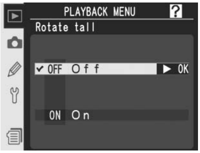
After Delete



To choose whether the following or previous picture is displayed after an image is deleted, highlight **After delete** in the playback menu (👁 156) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Option	Description
Show next (default)	After image is deleted, following image is displayed or highlighted in thumbnail list. If deleted image was last frame in memory, previous frame will be displayed or highlighted.
Show previous	After image is deleted, previous image is displayed or highlighted in thumbnail list. If deleted image was first frame in memory, following frame will be displayed or highlighted.
Continue as before	If user was scrolling through images in order recorded before deletion, following image will be displayed or highlighted (if deleted image was last frame in memory, previous frame will be displayed or highlighted). If user was scrolling through images in reverse order, previous image will be displayed or highlighted (if deleted image was first frame in memory, following frame will be displayed or highlighted).

Rotate Tall



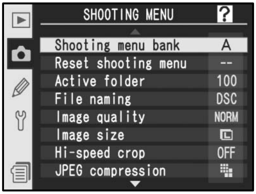
To choose whether photographs taken in "tall" (portrait) orientation are automatically rotated for display in the monitor, highlight **Rotate tall** in the playback menu (👁 156) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

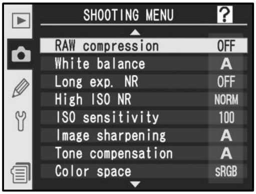
Option	Description
Off (default)	"Tall" (portrait) orientation photos are not displayed in tall orientation.
On	"Tall" (portrait) orientation photos taken with **On** selected for **Auto image rotation** (👁 218) are displayed in tall orientation during playback (tall orientation images are displayed at ⅔ size of other images to fit monitor).

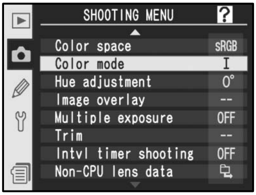
The Shooting Menu

Shooting Options

The shooting menu contains three pages of options:


SHOOTING MENU
Shooting menu bank A
Reset shooting menu --
Active folder 100
File naming DSC
Image quality NORM
Image size
Hi-speed crop OFF
JPEG compression


SHOOTING MENU
RAW compression OFF
White balance A
Long exp. NR OFF
High ISO NR NORM
ISO sensitivity 100
Image sharpening A
Tone compensation A
Color space sRGB


SHOOTING MENU
Color space sRGB
Color mode I
Hue adjustment 0°
Image overlay --
Multiple exposure OFF
Trim --
Intvl timer shooting OFF
Non-CPU lens data

Option	☞
Shooting menu bank	169–170
Reset shooting menu	171
Active folder	172
File naming	173
Image quality*	45–46
Image size*	48–49
Hi-speed crop	41–42
JPEG compression	47
RAW compression	48
White balance*	55–67
Long exp. NR	175
High ISO NR	176
ISO sensitivity*	52–53
Image sharpening	68
Tone compensation	69
Color space	70
Color mode	72
Hue adjustment	73
Image overlay	118–119
Multiple exposure	120–122
Trim	123–124
Intvl timer shooting	125–129
Non-CPU lens data	131–134

* Reset to defaults when a two-button reset is performed (☞ 136).

Press the multi selector up or down to scroll between pages.

Using the Multi Selector

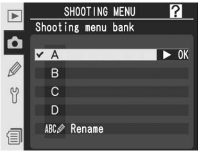
The multi selector can be used at any time when the monitor is on. The focus selector lock switch only takes effect when the monitor is off.

Shooting Menu Bank

All shooting menu options except interval timer and multiple exposure settings are stored in one of four banks. Changes to settings in one bank have no effect on the others. To store a particular combination of frequently-used settings, select one of the four banks and set the camera to these settings. The new settings will be stored in the bank even when the camera is turned off, and will be restored the next time the bank is selected. Different combinations of settings can be stored in the other banks, allowing the user to switch instantly from one combination to another by selecting the appropriate bank from the bank menu.

The default names for the four shooting menu banks are A, B, C, and D. A descriptive caption can be added using the **Rename** option.

To display the bank menu, highlight **Shooting menu bank** in the shooting menu (☞ 168) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.



Option	Description
A* (default)	Select bank A.
B*	Select bank B.
C*	Select bank C.
D*	Select bank D.
Rename	Rename selected bank.

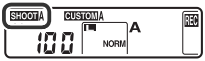
* Descriptive caption will also be displayed if bank has been renamed.

ISO Sensitivity

If a bank in which ISO sensitivity has been set to a value over ISO 800 is chosen after **On** is selected for Custom Setting b1 (**ISO auto**; ☞ 191), ISO sensitivity will NOT be adjusted automatically.

Shooting Menu Bank

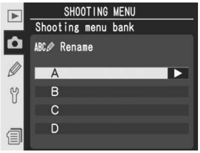
The rear control panel shows the bank currently selected in the shooting menu bank menu.



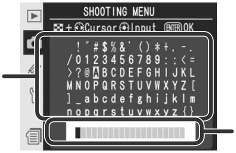
Renaming Shooting Menu Banks

1 Highlight **Rename** and press the multi selector to the right.

2 A list of shooting menu banks will be displayed. Highlight the desired bank and press the multi selector to the right.


SHOOTING MENU
Shooting menu bank
ABC✎ Rename
A ▶
B
C
D

3 The following dialog will be displayed. Enter a name as described below.


SHOOTING MENU
⊡+⊙Cursor ⊙Input ENTER OK
! " # $ % & ' ( ) * + , - .
/ 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 : ; < =
> ? @ A B C D E F G H I J K L
M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z [
] _ a b c d e f g h i j k l m
n o p q r s t u v w x y z { }

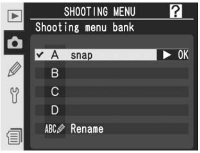
Keyboard area
Use multi selector to highlight letters, press center of multi selector to select.

Name area
Name appears here. To move cursor, press ⊡ button and use multi selector.

To move the cursor in the name area, press the ⊡ button and use the multi selector. To enter a new letter at the current cursor position, use the multi selector to highlight the desired character in the keyboard area and press the center of the multi selector. To delete the character at the current cursor position, press the 🗑 button. To return to the shooting menu without changing the bank name, press the MENU button.

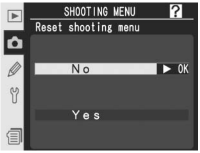
Bank names can be up to twenty characters long. Any characters after the twentieth will be deleted.

4 After editing the name, press ENTER to return to the bank menu.


SHOOTING MENU ?
Shooting menu bank
✓ A snap ▶ OK
B
C
D
ABC✎ Rename

Reset Shooting Menu

To restore default settings for the current shooting menu bank (☞ 169), highlight **Reset shooting menu** in the shooting menu (☞ 168) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.



Option	Description
No	Exit menu, leaving settings unchanged.
Yes	Restore settings to default values.

The following settings are affected:

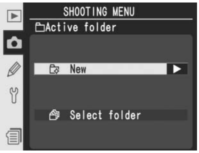
Option	Default
File naming	DSC
Image quality[*]	JPEG Normal
Image size[*]	Large
Hi-speed crop	Off
JPEG compression	Size priority
RAW compression	NEF (Raw)
White balance.[*]	Auto[†]
Long exp. NR	Off
High ISO NR	On (Normal)
ISO sensitivity[*]	100
Image sharpening	Auto
Tone compensation	Auto
Color space	sRGB
Color mode	I
Hue	0
Multiple exposure[‡]	
Number of shots	2
Auto gain	On
Interval timer shooting[‡]	
Start time	Now
Interval	00:01´:00˝
No. of intervals	1
No. of shots	1
Start	Off
Non-CPU lens data	
Focal length	N/A
Maximum aperture	N/A

[*] Defaults can also be restored by performing two-button reset (☞ 136).

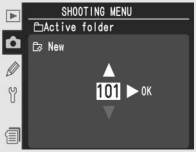
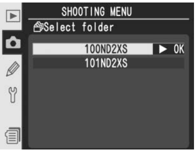
[†] Fine tuning reset to 0.

[‡] Applies to all banks. Shooting ends when reset is performed.

Active Folder



To select the folder in which subsequent images will be stored, highlight **Active folder** in the shooting menu (☞ 168) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Option	Description
New	Dialog shown at right will be displayed; press multi selector up or down to choose number for new folder. Press multi selector to right to create new folder and return to shooting menu. Subsequent photographs will be stored in new folder. 
Select folder	List of existing folders will be displayed; press multi selector up or down to highlight folder, press to right to select and return to shooting menu. Subsequent photographs will be stored in selected folder. 

Number of Folders

Additional time will be required for recording and playback if the memory card contains a very large number of folders.

Automatic Folder Creation

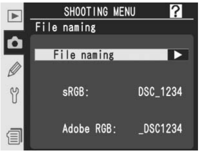
If the current folder contains 999 files, or if sequential file numbering (☞ 199) is on and the current folder contains a picture numbered 9999, the camera will automatically create a new folder for the next picture by adding one to the current folder number. If the memory card already contains a folder numbered 999, the shutter release will be disabled. If sequential file numbering is on, the shutter release will also be disabled if the current folder is numbered 999 and contains a picture numbered 9999. To continue shooting, create a folder with a number less than 999, or select an existing folder with a number less than 999 and less than 999 images.

Creating a Folder at Startup

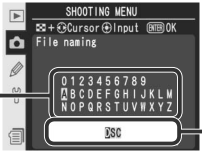
If the 🔑 button is pressed when the camera is turned on, a new folder will be created by adding one to the current folder number if no empty folders already exist.

File Naming

Photographs are saved using file names consisting of "DSC_" or "_DSC" followed by a four-digit file number and a three-letter extension (e.g., "DSC_0001.JPG"). The **File Naming** option is used to change the "DSC" portion of the file name.


SHOOTING MENU
?
File naming
File naming ▶
sRGB: DSC_1234
Adobe RGB: _DSC1234

Highlight **File Naming** in the shooting menu (👁 168) and press the multi selector to the right. The menu shown at right will be displayed; press the multi selector to the right to display the following dialog.


SHOOTING MENU
⊞+Cursor Input ENTER OK
File naming
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
A B C D E F G H I J K L M
N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
DSC

Keyboard area
Use multi selector to highlight letters, press center of multi selector to select.

Prefix area
File name prefix appears here. To move cursor left or right, press ⊞ button and use multi selector.

To move the cursor left or right in the prefix area, press the ⊞ button and use the multi selector. To enter a new letter at the current cursor position, use the multi selector to highlight the desired character in the keyboard area and press the center of the multi selector. To delete the character at the current cursor position, press the 🗑 button. To return to the shooting menu without changing the file naming rule, press the MENU button.

After editing the file name prefix, press ENTER to return to the shooting menu. New photographs will be saved using the new file naming rule.

Image Quality

Eight options are available for image quality. See "Taking Photographs: Image Quality and Size" (👁 45).

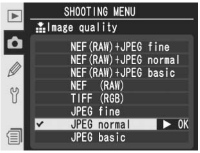
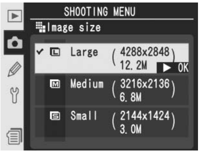

SHOOTING MENU
Image quality
NEF (RAW) +JPEG fine
NEF (RAW) +JPEG normal
NEF (RAW) +JPEG basic
NEF (RAW)
TIFF (RGB)
JPEG fine
✓ JPEG normal ▶ OK
JPEG basic

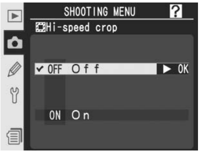
Image Size

Image size can be selected from **Large**, **Medium**, and **Small**. See "Taking Photographs: Image Quality and Size" (👁 48).


SHOOTING MENU
Image size
✓ L Large (4288x2848 12. 2M) ▶ OK
M Medium (3216x2136 6. 8M)
S Small (2144x1424 3. 0M)

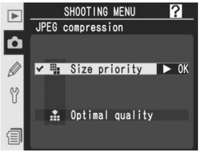
Hi-Speed Crop

Select **On** to shoot only the area in the viewfinder high-speed crop, increasing the frame advance rate to up to 8 fps and allowing more images to be stored in the memory buffer. See "Taking Photographs: High-Speed Crop" (👁 41).


SHOOTING MENU ?
Hi-speed crop
✓ OFF Off ▶ OK
ON On

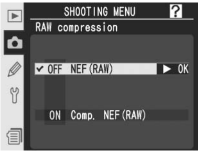
JPEG Compression

Choose whether to compress JPEG images to a fixed size or to vary file size for improved image quality. See "Taking Photographs: Image Quality and Size" (👁 47).


SHOOTING MENU ?
JPEG compression
✓ Size priority ▶ OK
Optimal quality

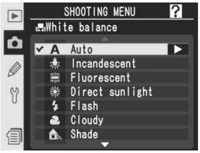
RAW Compression

Choose whether to compress NEF (RAW) images created at image-quality settings of **NEF (RAW)+JPEG fine**, **NEF (RAW)+JPEG normal**, **NEF (RAW)+JPEG basic**, and **NEF (RAW)**. See “Taking Photographs: Image Quality and Size” (48).


SHOOTING MENU
RAW compression
OFF NEF (RAW)
OK
ON Comp. NEF (RAW)

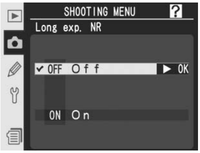
White Balance

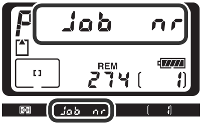
Nine options are available for white balance. See “Taking Photographs: White Balance” (55).


SHOOTING MENU
White balance
A Auto
Incandescent
Fluorescent
Direct sunlight
Flash
Cloudy
Shade

Long Exp. NR

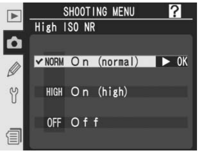
Photographs taken at shutter speeds of ½ s or slower can be processed to reduce “noise” in the form of randomly-spaced, brightly-colored pixels. Highlight **Long exp. NR** in the shooting menu (168) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.


SHOOTING MENU
Long exp. NR
OFF Off
OK
ON On

Option	Description
Off (default)	Noise reduction off; camera functions normally.
On	 P Job nr REM 274 [ ] Job nr Noise reduction on; capacity of memory buffer drops. At shutter speeds of about ½ s or slower, images are processed to reduce noise, more than doubling processing time. During processing, Job nr blinks in shutter-speed/aperture displays. Next photo can be taken when Job nr is no longer displayed. Note that if photographs are played back during processing, the image displayed in the monitor may not show the effects of noise reduction.

High ISO NR

Photographs taken at high ISO sensitivities can be processed to reduce "noise." Highlight **High ISO NR** in the shooting menu (🔍 168) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.


SHOOTING MENU
?
High ISO NR
✓ NORM On (normal) ▶ OK
HIGH On (high)
OFF Off

Option	Description
On (normal) (default)	Noise reduction takes effect at ISO sensitivities of ISO 400–800 or if ISO sensitivity is raised to 400 or higher when **On** is selected for Custom Setting b1 (**ISO auto**), increasing processing time and reducing capacity of memory buffer. Increased noise reduction is performed at ISO sensitivities over ISO 800 or when **On (high)** is selected.
On (high)	
Off	Noise reduction turns off except at ISO sensitivities over ISO 800.

ISO Sensitivity

ISO sensitivity can be increased from the default value (100). Settings over ISO 800 are only available when Custom Setting b1 (**ISO auto**) is off. See "Taking Photographs: ISO Sensitivity" (🔍 52).

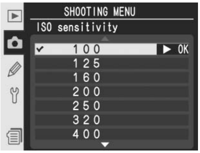
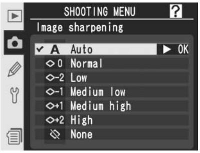

SHOOTING MENU
ISO sensitivity
✓ 100 ▶ OK
125
160
200
250
320
400

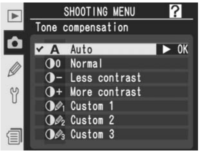
Image Sharpening

Seven options are available for image sharpening. See "Taking Photographs: Image Adjustment" (🔍 68).


SHOOTING MENU
?
Image sharpening
✓ A Auto ▶ OK
0 Normal
-2 Low
-1 Medium low
+1 Medium high
+2 High
None

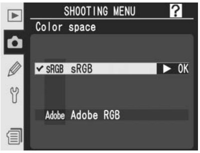
Tone Compensation

Five options are available for controlling image contrast. See "Taking Photographs: Image Adjustment" (🔍 69).


SHOOTING MENU
?
Tone compensation
✓ A Auto ▶ OK
0 Normal
– Less contrast
+ More contrast
1 Custom 1
2 Custom 2
3 Custom 3

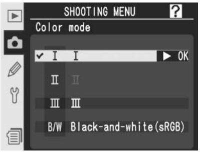
Color Space

Choose from sRGB and Adobe RGB color spaces. See “Taking Photographs: Image Adjustment” (👁 70).


SHOOTING MENU
Color space
✓ sRGB sRGB ▶ OK
Adobe Adobe RGB

Color Mode

Choose from four color modes, including black-and-white. See “Taking Photographs: Image Adjustment” (👁 72).


SHOOTING MENU
Color mode
✓ I I ▶ OK
II II
III III
B/W Black-and-white(sRGB)

Hue Adjustment

Hue can be set to values between approximately –9° and +9° in seven increments of roughly 3°. See “Taking Photographs: Image Adjustment” (👁 73).

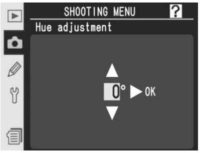
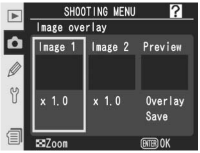

SHOOTING MENU
Hue adjustment
0° ▶ OK

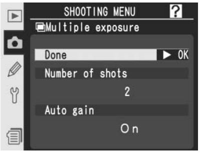
Image Overlay

Create a new image by superimposing two existing RAW photographs. The RAW photographs must have been created using the D2Xs and be on the same memory card. See “Taking Photographs: Overlay/Multiple Exposure” (👁 118).


SHOOTING MENU
Image overlay
Image 1
Image 2
Preview
x 1.0
x 1.0
Overlay
Save
Zoom
ENTER OK

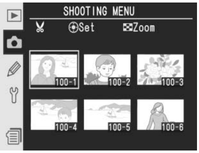
Multiple Exposure

Create a single photograph from two to ten exposures. See “Taking Photographs: Overlay/Multiple Exposure” (👁 120).


SHOOTING MENU
Multiple exposure
Done ▶ OK
Number of shots
2
Auto gain
On

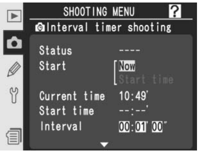
Trim

Create a cropped copy of an existing photograph. See "Taking Photographs: Trimming Photographs" (👁 123).


SHOOTING MENU
Set
Zoom
100-1
100-2
100-3
100-4
100-5
100-6

Interval Timer Shooting

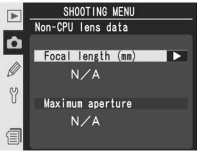
Take photographs automatically at pre-selected intervals. See "Taking Photographs: Interval Timer Photography" (👁 125).


SHOOTING MENU
?
Interval timer shooting

Status ----
Start Now
Start time
Current time 10:49'
Start time --:--'
Interval 00:01' 00"

Non-CPU Lens Data

Specifying the focal length and maximum aperture allows such features as color matrix metering, aperture value display, and balanced fill flash to be used with non-CPU lenses. See "Taking Photographs: Non-CPU Lenses" (👁 131).

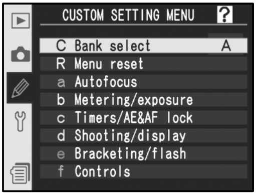

SHOOTING MENU
Non-CPU lens data

Focal length (mm)
N/A
Maximum aperture
N/A

Custom Settings

Fine-Tuning Camera Settings

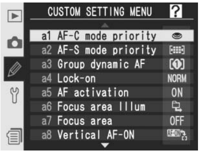
Custom settings are used to fine-tune a variety of camera settings to suit the user's preferences, creating combinations of settings that differ from the factory defaults in effect at the time your camera was purchased. In addition to Custom Settings C (**Bank select**) and R (**Menu reset**), settings in the CSM (Custom Settings) menu are divided into the following six groups:



CUSTOM SETTING MENU
C Bank select A
R Menu reset
a Autofocus
b Metering/exposure
c Timers/AE&AF lock
d Shooting/display
e Bracketing/flash
f Controls

Group		Custom Settings
a	**Autofocus**	a1–a8
b	**Metering/exposure**	b1–b7
c	**Timers/AE&AF lock**	c1–c5
d	**Shooting/display**	d1–d6
e	**Bracketing/flash**	e1–e8
f	**Controls**	f1–f8

Press the multi selector up or down to highlight the desired group and then press the multi selector to the right. The full list of Custom Settings a1–f8 will be displayed, starting with the settings in the selected group. To select a setting in a different group, press the multi selector up or down scroll until the desired setting is displayed, or press the multi selector to the left to return the top menu and select a different group. Custom Setting a1 (**AF-C mode priority**) and f8 (**No CF card?**) are linked: pressing the multi selector up when Custom Setting a1 is highlighted displays Custom Setting f8, while pressing the multi selector down while Custom Setting f8 is highlighted displays Custom Setting a1.



CUSTOM SETTING MENU
a1 AF-C mode priority
a2 AF-S mode priority
a3 Group dynamic AF
a4 Lock-on NORM
a5 AF activation ON
a6 Focus area Illum
a7 Focus area OFF
a8 Vertical AF-ON

Using the Multi Selector

The multi selector can be used at any time when the monitor is on. The focus selector lock switch only takes effect when the monitor is off.

The following Custom Settings are available:

Options				👁
C	Bank select		Custom setting bank	182
R	Menu reset		Reset CSM menu	183–184
a	Autofocus			
	a1	AF-C mode priority	AF-C priority selection	185
	a2	AF-S mode priority	AF-S priority selection	185
	a3	Group dynamic AF	Pattern selection in Group Dynamic AF	186–187
	a4	Lock-on	Focus Tracking with Lock-On	188
	a5	AF activation	AF activation	188
	a6	Focus area Illum	Focus area Illumination	189
	a7	Focus area	Focus area select	190
	a8	Vertical AF-ON	Vertical AF-ON button function	190
b	Metering/exposure			
	b1	ISO auto	ISO auto control	191–192
	b2	ISO step value	ISO sensitivity step value	192
	b3	EV step	EV steps for exposure control	192
	b4	Exposure comp. EV	EV steps for exposure compensation	193
	b5	Exposure comp.	Easy exposure compensation	193
	b6	Center weight	Center weight area	194
	b7	Fine tune exposure	Fine tune optimal exposure	194
c	Timers/AE&AF lock			
	c1	AE lock	AE lock buttons	195
	c2	AE-L/AF-L	Assignment of AE-L/AF-L button	195
	c3	Auto meter-off	Auto meter-off delay	196
	c4	Self-timer	Self-timer delay	196
	c5	Monitor off	Monitor off delay	196

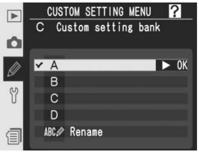
Options				
d	Shooting/display			
	d1	Shooting speed	CL-Mode shooting speed	197
	d2	Maximum shots	Max No. of shots taken in continuous shooting	197
	d3	Exp. delay mode	Exposure delay mode	198
	d4	File No. Seq.	File number sequence	199
	d5	Cntrl panel/finder	Control panel/viewfinder display	199–200
	d6	Illumination	LCD Illumination	200
e	Bracketing/flash			
	e1	Flash sync speed	Flash sync speed setting	201
	e2	Flash shutter speed	Slowest speed when using flash	201
	e3	AA flash mode	AA flash mode	202
	e4	Modeling flash	Preview button activates modeling flash	202
	e5	Auto BKT set	Auto bracketing set	203
	e6	Manual mode bkting	Auto bracketing in M exposure mode	204
	e7	Auto BKT order	Auto bracketing order	204
	e8	Auto BKT selection	Auto Bracketing Selection method	205
f	Controls			
	f1	Center button	Multi selector center button	205–206
	f2	Multi selector	When multi selector is pressed:	207
	f3	Photo info/playback	Role of multi selector in full-frame playback	207
	f4	FUNC. button	FUNC. button press	208
	f5	FUNC. + command	FUNC. button + command dials	209
	f6	Command dials	Customize command dials	210–211
	f7	Buttons and dials	Setting method for buttons and dials	212
	f8	No CF card?	Disable shutter if no CF card	212

Custom Setting C: *Custom Setting Bank*

Custom Settings are stored in one of four banks. Changes to settings in one bank have no effect on the others. To store a particular combination of frequently-used settings, select one of the four banks and set the camera to these settings. The new settings will be stored in the bank even when the camera is turned off, and will be restored the next time the bank is selected. Different combinations of settings can be stored in the other banks, allowing the user to switch instantly from one combination to another by selecting the appropriate bank from the bank menu.

The default names for the four Custom Settings banks are A, B, C, and D. A descriptive caption can be added using the **Rename** option as described in "The Shooting Menu: Shooting Menu Bank" (👁 169).

To display the bank menu, highlight **Bank select** in the top level of the CSM menu (👁 179) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.



Option	Description
A* (default)	Select bank A.
B*	Select bank B.
C*	Select bank C.
D*	Select bank D.
Rename	Rename selected bank.

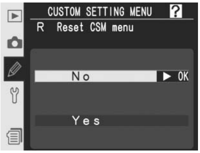
* Descriptive caption will also be displayed if bank has been renamed.

ISO Sensitivity

If a bank in which **On** is selected for Custom Setting b1 (**ISO auto**; 👁 191) is chosen after ISO sensitivity has been set to a value over ISO 800, ISO sensitivity will NOT be adjusted automatically.

Custom Setting R: *Reset CSM Menu*

To restore default settings for the current Custom Settings bank (👁 182), highlight **Menu reset** in the top level of the CSM menu (👁 179) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.


CUSTOM SETTING MENU
R Reset CSM menu
No ▶ OK
Yes

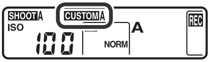
Option	Description
No	Exit menu, leaving settings unchanged.
Yes	Restore settings to default values.

Two-Button Reset

Custom Settings are not reset when a two-button reset is performed (👁 136).

Custom Settings Bank

If settings in the current bank have been modified from default values, the rear control panel display will show **CUSTOM** and the letter of the bank. An asterisk will be displayed next to the altered settings in the second level of the Custom Settings menu.



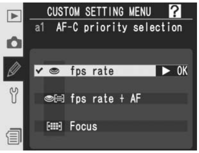
Default settings are listed below.

Option		Default
a1	**AF-C mode priority**	fps rate
a2	**AF-S mode priority**	Focus
a3	**Group dynamic AF**	Pattern 1/ Center area
a4	**Lock-on**	Normal
a5	**AF activation**	Shutter/AF-ON
a6	**Focus area illum**	
	Manual focus mode	On
	Continuous mode	On
	When selected	0.2 s
a7	**Focus area**	No wrap
a8	**Vertical AF-ON**	AF-ON+focus area
b1	**ISO auto**	Off
b2	**ISO step value**	1/3 step
b3	**EV step**	1/3 step
b4	**Exposure comp. EV**	1/3 step
b5	**Exposure comp.**	Off
b6	**Center weight**	ϕ 8 mm
b7	**Fine tune exposure**	0*
c1	**AE lock**	AE-L/AF-L button
c2	**AE-L/AF-L**	AE/AF lock
c3	**Auto meter-off**	6 s
c4	**Self-timer**	10 s
c5	**Monitor off**	20 s
d1	**Shooting speed**	3 fps
d2	**Maximum shots**	60

* Applies to all metering methods.

Option		Default
d3	**Exp. delay mode**	Off
d4	**File No. Seq.**	Off
d5	**Cntrl panel/finder**	
	Rear control panel	ISO sensitivity
	Viewfinder display	Frame count
d6	**Illumination**	Lamp on switch
e1	**Flash sync speed**	1/250 s
e2	**Flash shutter speed**	1/60 s
e3	**AA flash mode**	On
e4	**Modeling flash**	On
e5	**Auto BKT set**	AE & flash
e6	**Manual mode bkting**	Flash/speed
e7	**Auto BKT order**	MTR>under>over
e8	**Auto BKT selection**	Manual value select
f1	**Center button**	
	Shooting mode	Center AF area
	Playback mode	Thumbnail on/off
f2	**Multi selector**	Do nothing
f3	**Photo info/playback**	Info ◀▶/PB▲▼
f4	**FUNC. button**	None
f5	**FUNC. + command**	None
f6	**Command dials**	
	Rotate direction	Normal
	Change main/sub	Off
	Aperture setting	Sub-command dial
	Menus and playback	Off
f7	**Buttons and dials**	Default
f8	**No CF card?**	On

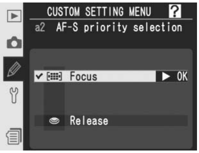
Custom Setting a1: *AF-C Priority Selection*



This option controls whether photographs can be taken whenever the shutter-release button is pressed (*release priority*) or only when the camera is in focus (*focus priority*) in continuous-servo AF. Highlight **a1 AF-C mode priority** in the second level of the CSM menu (👁 180) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Option	Description
fps rate (default)	Photos can be taken whenever shutter-release button is pressed.
fps rate + AF	Photos can be taken even when camera is not in focus. In continuous mode, frame rate slows for improved focus if subject is dark or low contrast.
Focus	Photos can only be taken when in-focus indicator (●) is displayed.

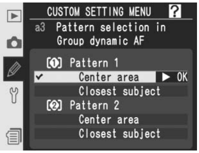
Custom Setting a2: *AF-S Priority Selection*



This option controls whether photographs can be taken only when the camera is in focus (*focus priority*) or whenever the shutter-release button is pressed (*release priority*) in single-servo AF. No matter which option is selected, focus will lock if the in-focus indicator (●) is displayed when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. Highlight **a2 AF-S mode priority** in the second level of the CSM menu (👁 180) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Option	Description
Focus (default)	Photos can only be taken when in-focus indicator (●) is displayed.
Release	Photos can be taken whenever shutter-release button is pressed.

Custom Setting a3: *Pattern Selection in Group Dynamic AF*



CUSTOM SETTING MENU

a3 Pattern selection in Group dynamic AF

Pattern 1

✓ Center area ▶ OK

Closest subject

Pattern 2

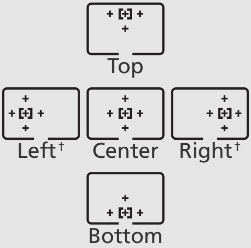
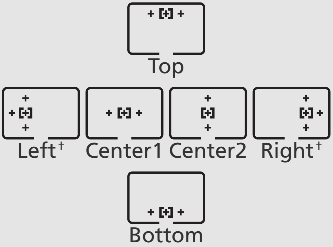
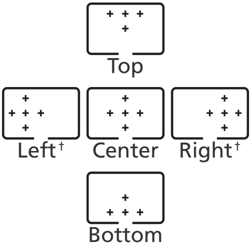
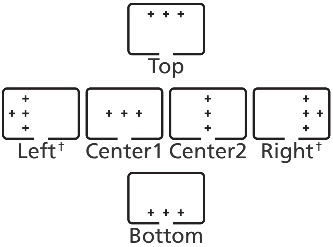
Center area

Closest subject

This option controls how focus areas are grouped in group dynamic-AF (👁 79) and whether the camera gives priority to the subject in the center focus area of the selected group. Highlight **a3 Group dynamic AF** in the second level of the CSM menu (👁 180) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Option	Description
Pattern 1/ Center area (default)	Focus areas are grouped in pattern 1 (👁 187). Camera focuses on subject in center focus area of selected group. Because camera does not have to select focus area, less time is required for focus operation. If subject moves out of center focus area, camera will focus based on information from other focus areas in same group. Center focus area of selected group is highlighted in top control panel.
Pattern 1/ Closest subject	Focus areas are grouped in pattern 1 (👁 187). Camera automatically selects focus area containing principal subject closest to camera in current focus area group. If subject moves out of selected focus area, camera will focus based on information from other focus areas in same group.
Pattern 2/ Center area	As for **Pattern 1/Center area**, except that focus areas are grouped in pattern 2 (👁 187).
Pattern 2/ Closest subject	As for **Pattern 1/Closest subject**, except that focus areas are grouped in pattern 2 (👁 187).

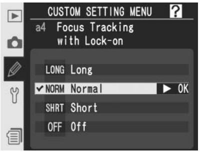
Focus areas are grouped as follows (illustrations show the display in the top control panel):

	Pattern 1	**Pattern 2***
Center area	 Top Left† Center Right† Bottom	 Top Left† Center1 Center2 Right† Bottom
Closest subject	 Top Left† Center Right† Bottom	 Top Left† Center1 Center2 Right† Bottom

* The center focus-area group is selected by pressing the center of the multi selector once to activate the current center focus-area group and then pressing the center of the multi selector to toggle between "center 1" and "center 2." "Center 2" is only available when **Center AF area** (the default option) is selected for **Center button** (Custom Setting f1)>**Shooting mode**.

† The focus areas outside the high-speed crop are not displayed when high-speed crop is on.

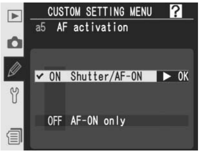
Custom Setting a4: *Focus Tracking with Lock-On*



This option controls how autofocus adjusts to sudden large changes in the distance to the subject. Highlight **a4 Lock-on** in the second level of the CSM menu (📖 180) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Option	Description
Long	Camera waits before adjusting focus when distance to subject changes abruptly. Prevents camera from refocusing when subject is briefly obscured by objects passing through frame. Setting refers to length of time before camera refocuses.
Normal (default)	
Short	
Off	Camera immediately adjusts focus when distance to subject changes abruptly. Use when photographing series of subjects at varying distances in quick succession.

Custom Setting a5: *AF Activation*

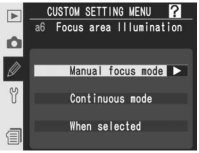


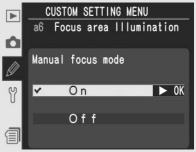
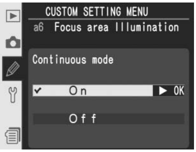
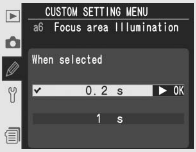
This option controls whether both the shutter-release button and the **AF-ON** buttons can be used to initiate autofocus or whether autofocus is only initiated when one of the **AF-ON** buttons is pressed. Highlight **a5 AF activation** in the second level of the CSM menu (📖 180) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Option	Description
Shutter/AF-ON (default)	Autofocus can be performed with **AF-ON** buttons or by pressing shutter-release button halfway.
AF-ON only	Autofocus can only be performed using **AF-ON** buttons.

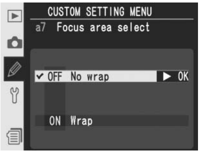
Custom Setting a6: *Focus Area Illumination*

The options in this menu control when the focus areas are illuminated and for how long. Highlight **a6 Focus area illum** in the second level of the CSM menu (☞ 180) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press the multi selector to the right.


CUSTOM SETTING MENU
?
a6 Focus area Illumination
Manual focus mode ▶
Continuous mode
When selected

Option	Description
Manual focus mode	Controls whether active focus area is displayed in manual focus mode. Press multi selector up or down to highlight option, press to right to select: • **On** (default): Active focus area displayed when shutter-release button is pressed halfway. • **Off**: Focus areas not displayed in manual focus mode.  CUSTOM SETTING MENU a6 Focus area Illumination Manual focus mode ✓ On ▶ OK Off
Continuous mode	Controls whether active focus area is displayed in CH (continuous high-speed) or CL (continuous low-speed) mode. Press multi selector up or down to highlight option, press to right to select: • **On** (default): Active focus area displayed in continuous mode. • **Off**: Focus areas not displayed in continuous mode.  CUSTOM SETTING MENU a6 Focus area Illumination Continuous mode ✓ On ▶ OK Off
When selected	Determines how long active focus area is displayed when selected. Press multi selector up or down to highlight option, press to right to select: • **0.2 s** (default): Active focus area displayed for 0.2 s. • **1 s**: Active focus area displayed for 1 s.  CUSTOM SETTING MENU a6 Focus area Illumination When selected ✓ 0.2 s ▶ OK 1 s

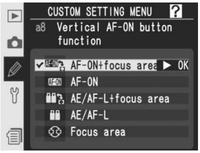
Custom Setting a7: *Focus Area Select*



By default, the focus-area display is bounded by the four outer focus areas so that, for example, pressing the multi selector up when the top focus area is selected has no effect. Focus-area selection can be changed to "wrap around." Highlight **a7 Focus area** in the second level of the CSM menu (☞ 180) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Option	Description
No wrap (default)	Wrap-around disabled.
Wrap	Focus-area selection "wraps around" from top to bottom, bottom to top, right to left, and left to right.

Custom Setting a8: *Vertical AF-ON Button Function*



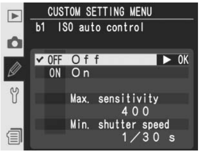
This option determines what functions are assigned to the **AF-ON** button for vertical shooting. Highlight **a8 Vertical AF-ON** in the second level of the CSM menu (☞ 180) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

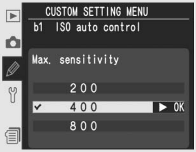
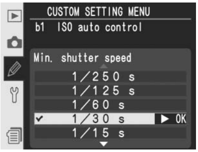
Option	Description
AF-ON+ focus area (default)	Pressing vertical AF-ON button initiates autofocus. Focus area can be selected by pressing vertical **AF-ON** button and rotating sub-command dial.
AF-ON	Pressing vertical **AF-ON** button initiates autofocus.
AE/AF-L+ focus area	As for **AF-ON+focus area**, except that pressing vertical **AF-ON** button locks focus and exposure.
AE/AF-L	Pressing vertical **AF-ON** button locks focus and exposure.
Focus area	Focus area can be selected by pressing vertical **AF-ON** button and rotating sub-command dial. Button can not be used for other functions.

Custom Setting b1: *ISO Auto Control*

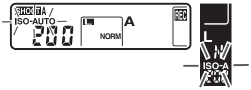
If **On** is selected for this option, the camera will automatically adjust ISO sensitivity when necessary to help ensure optimal exposure. This option is not available at ISO sensitivities over 800.

Highlight **b1 ISO auto** in the second level of the CSM menu (🔍 180) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.


CUSTOM SETTING MENU
b1 ISO auto control
✓ OFF Off ▶ OK
ON On
Max. sensitivity
400
Min. shutter speed
1/30 s

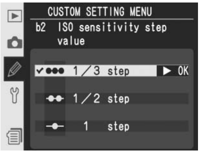
Option	Description
Off (default)	ISO sensitivity remains fixed at value selected by user, regardless of whether optimal exposure can be achieved at current exposure settings.
On	If optimal exposure can not be achieved at ISO sensitivity selected by user, ISO sensitivity is adjusted to compensate, to minimum approximately equivalent to ISO 100 and maximum selected using **Max. Sensitivity** option. In exposure modes **P** and **A**, ISO sensitivity will be adjusted if photo would be overexposed at shutter speed of 1/8,000 s or underexposed at value selected for **Min. Shutter Speed**. Otherwise camera adjusts ISO sensitivity when limits of exposure metering system are exceeded (mode **S**) or when optimum exposure can not be achieved at shutter speed and aperture selected by user (mode **M**). ISO sensitivity can not be set to values over 800 while this option is in effect.
Max. sensitivity	Menu shown at right is displayed. Press multi selector up or down to highlight desired ISO sensitivity and press to right to return to ISO auto menu.  CUSTOM SETTING MENU b1 ISO auto control Max. sensitivity 200 ✓ 400 ▶ OK 800
Min. shutter speed	Menu shown at right is displayed. Press multi selector up or down to highlight desired shutter speed and press to right to return to ISO auto menu.  CUSTOM SETTING MENU b1 ISO auto control Min. shutter speed 1/250 s 1/125 s 1/60 s ✓ 1/30 s ▶ OK 1/15 s

When **On** is selected, the rear control-panel display shows **ISO-AUTO** and **ISO-A** appears in the viewfinder sidebar. These indicators flash when ISO sensitivity is altered from the value selected by the user.



Custom Setting b2: *ISO Sensitivity Step Value*

This option determines whether adjustments to ISO sensitivity are made in increments equivalent to ⅓ EV (**1/3 step**, the default option), ½ EV (**1/2 step**), or 1 EV (**1 step**). Highlight **b2 ISO step value** in the second level of the CSM menu (👁 180) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.



CUSTOM SETTING MENU

b2 ISO sensitivity step value

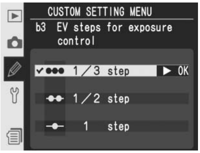
✓●●● 1/3 step ▶ OK

●● 1/2 step

● 1 step

Custom Setting b3: *EV Steps for Exposure Control*

This option determines whether adjustments to shutter speed, aperture, and bracketing are made in increments equivalent to ⅓ EV (**1/3 step**, the default option), ½ EV (**1/2 step**), or 1 EV (**1 step**). Highlight **b3 EV step** in the second level of the CSM menu (👁 180) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.



CUSTOM SETTING MENU

b3 EV steps for exposure control

✓●●● 1/3 step ▶ OK

●● 1/2 step

● 1 step

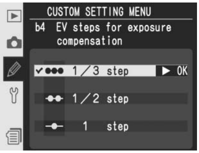
Bank Select

If a shooting menu bank in which ISO sensitivity has been set to a value over 800 is chosen after **On** is selected for Custom Setting b1, ISO sensitivity will not be adjusted automatically. ISO sensitivity will also not be adjusted automatically if a Custom Settings bank in which **On** is selected for Custom Setting b1 is chosen after ISO sensitivity has been set to a value over 800.

High ISO NR (👁 176)

Noise is more likely to appear in photographs taken at higher sensitivities. To reduce noise at ISO sensitivities of ISO 400 equivalent and above, turn on the **High ISO NR** option in the shooting menu.

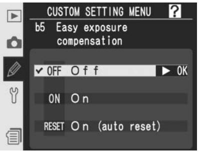
Custom Setting b4: *EV Steps for Exposure Compensation*


CUSTOM SETTING MENU
b4 EV steps for exposure compensation
✓ ●●● 1/3 step ▶ OK
●● 1/2 step
● 1 step

This option determines whether adjustments to exposure compensation are made in increments equivalent to ⅓ EV (**1/3 step**, the default option), ½ EV (**1/2 step**), or 1 EV (**1 step**). Highlight **b4 Exposure comp. EV** in the second level of the CSM menu (180) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Custom Setting b5: *Easy Exposure Compensation*

This option controls whether the ⊠ button is needed to set exposure compensation (99). If **On** is selected, the 0 at the center of the exposure display will blink even when exposure compensation is set to ±0.

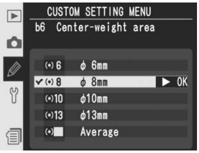

CUSTOM SETTING MENU ?
b5 Easy exposure compensation
✓ OFF Off ▶ OK
ON On
RESET On (auto reset)

Highlight **b5 Exposure comp.** in the second level of the CSM menu (180) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

<table>
<tr><th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Off
(default)</td><td>Exposure compensation set by pressing ⊠ button and rotating main command dial.</td></tr>
<tr><td>On</td><td>Exposure compensation set by rotating command dial only. Dial used depends on option selected for Custom Setting f6 > Change main/sub.
<table>
<tr><th colspan="2"></th><th colspan="2">Command dials (Custom Setting f6) > Change main/sub</th></tr>
<tr><th colspan="2"></th><th>Off</th><th>On</th></tr>
<tr><th rowspan="4">Exposure mode</th><th>P</th><td>Sub-command dial</td><td>Sub-command dial</td></tr>
<tr><th>S</th><td>Sub-command dial</td><td>Main command dial</td></tr>
<tr><th>A</th><td>Main command dial</td><td>Sub-command dial</td></tr>
<tr><th>M</th><td colspan="2">N/A</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
</table>

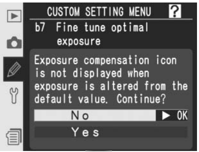
Custom Setting b6: *Center Weight Area*

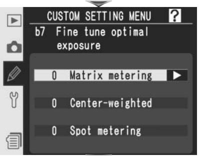
When calculating exposure, center-weighted metering assigns the greatest weight to a circle in the center of the frame. The diameter (ϕ) of this circle can be selected from 6, 8, 10, and 13 mm (the default option is 8 mm; note that the diameter is fixed at 8 mm when a non-CPU lens is used, regardless of the setting selected for **Non-CPU lens data** in the shooting menu, and that a setting of 13 mm is equivalent to 10 mm when high-speed crop is on). Highlight **b6 Center weight** in the second level of the CSM menu (👁 180) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

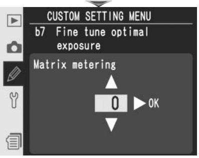

CUSTOM SETTING MENU
b6 Center-weight area
(•) 6 ϕ 6mm
✓(•) 8 ϕ 8mm ▶ OK
(•)10 ϕ10mm
(•)13 ϕ13mm
(•)■ Average

Custom Setting b7: *Fine Tune Optimal Exposure*

Use this option to fine-tune the exposure value selected by the camera. Exposure can be fine tuned separately for each metering method by from +1 to –1 EV in steps of ⅙ EV. Highlight **b7 Fine tune exposure** in the second level of the CSM menu (👁 180) and press the multi selector to the right. A message will be displayed warning that the ± icon does not appear when exposure is altered; press the multi selector up or down to highlight **Yes** and press the multi selector to the right (select **No** to exit without altering exposure). Press the multi selector up or down to highlight a metering method and press the multi selector to the right to display a list of exposure values. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.


CUSTOM SETTING MENU ?
b7 Fine tune optimal exposure
Exposure compensation icon is not displayed when exposure is altered from the default value. Continue?
No ▶ OK
Yes

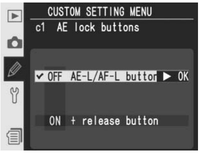

CUSTOM SETTING MENU ?
b7 Fine tune optimal exposure
0 Matrix metering ▶
0 Center-weighted
0 Spot metering


CUSTOM SETTING MENU
b7 Fine tune optimal exposure
Matrix metering
▲
0 ▶OK
▼

Fine-Tuning Exposure

Exposure can be fine-tuned separately for each Custom Settings bank. Note that as the exposure compensation icon (±) is not displayed, the only way to determine whether exposure has been altered is to view the fine-tuning menu. Exposure compensation (👁 99) is recommended in most situations.

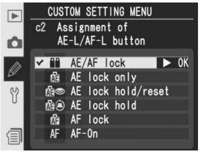
Custom Setting c1: *AE Lock Buttons*


CUSTOM SETTING MENU
c1 AE lock buttons
✓ OFF AE-L/AF-L button ▶ OK
ON + release button

This option determines what controls lock exposure. Highlight **c1 AE lock** in the second level of the CSM menu (☞ 180) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Option	Description
AE-L/AF-L button (default)	Exposure can only be locked by pressing **AE-L/AF-L** button.
+ release button	Exposure can be locked by pressing **AE-L/AF-L** button or by pressing shutter-release button halfway.

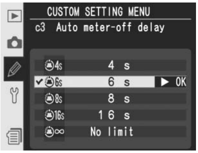
Custom Setting c2: *Assignment of AE-L/AF-L Button*


CUSTOM SETTING MENU
c2 Assignment of AE-L/AF-L button
✓ AE/AF lock ▶ OK
AE lock only
AE lock hold/reset
AE lock hold
AF lock
AF AF-On

This option controls the behavior of the **AE-L/AF-L** button. Highlight **c2 AE-L/AF-L** in the second level of the CSM menu (☞ 180) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

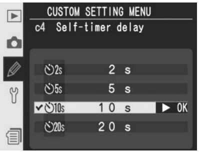
Option	Description
AE/AF lock (default)	Both focus and exposure lock while **AE-L/AF-L** button is pressed.
AE lock only	Exposure locks while **AE-L/AF-L** button is pressed. Focus is unaffected.
AE lock hold/reset	Exposure locks when **AE-L/AF-L** button is pressed and remains locked until button is pressed again, shutter is released or exposure meters turn off.
AE lock hold	Exposure locks when **AE-L/AF-L** button is pressed and remains locked until button is pressed again or exposure meters turn off.
AF lock	Focus locks while **AE-L/AF-L** button is pressed. Exposure is unaffected.
AF-On	**AE-L/AF-L** button performs same function as **AF-ON** button.

Custom Setting c3: *Auto Meter-off Delay*


CUSTOM SETTING MENU
c3 Auto meter-off delay
4 s
✓ 6 s ▶ OK
8 s
16 s
No limit

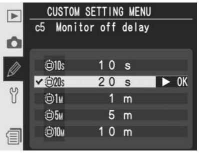
This option controls how long the camera continues to meter exposure when no operations are performed: 4s, 6s (the default option), 8s, or 16s or until the camera is turned off (**No limit**). Highlight **c3 Auto meter-off** in the second level of the CSM menu (☞ 180) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection. Choose a shorter meter-off delay for longer battery life.

Custom Setting c4: *Self-Timer Delay*


CUSTOM SETTING MENU
c4 Self-timer delay
2 s
5 s
✓ 10 s ▶ OK
20 s

This option controls the length of the shutter-release delay in self-timer mode. Shutter-release can be delayed by approximately 2s, 5s, 10s (the default option), or 20s. Highlight **c4 Self-timer** in the second level of the CSM menu (☞ 180) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Custom Setting c5: *Monitor off Delay*


CUSTOM SETTING MENU
c5 Monitor off delay
10 s
✓ 20 s ▶ OK
1 m
5 m
10 m

This option controls how long the monitor remains on when no operations are performed: 10s, 20s (the default option), 1 minute, 5 minutes, or 10 minutes. Highlight **c5 Monitor off** in the second level of the CSM menu (☞ 180) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection. Choose a shorter monitor-off delay for longer battery life.

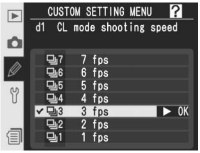
The EH-6 AC Adapter

When the camera is powered by an optional EH-6 AC adapter, exposure meters will not turn off and the monitor will only power off after ten minutes, regardless of the options chosen for Custom Settings c3 (**Auto meter-off**) and c5 (**Monitor off**).

Custom Setting d1: *CL-Mode Shooting Speed*

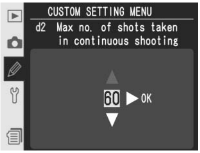
This option determines the rate at which photographs can be taken in CL (continuous low-speed) mode (during interval timer photography, this setting also determines the frame advance rate for single-frame and mirror-up modes). Shooting speed can be set to values between 1 and 7 frames per second (fps); the default value is 3 fps. Regardless of the setting chosen, the maximum speed when **Hi-speed Crop** is **Off** is 4 fps (👁 41). The frame advance rate may drop at slow shutter speeds.

Highlight **d1 Shooting speed** in the second level of the CSM menu (👁 181) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.



Custom Setting d2: *Max No. of Shots Taken in Continuous Shooting*

The maximum number of shots that can be taken in a single burst in continuous mode can be set to any value between 1 and 60. Highlight **d2 Maximum shots** in the second level of the CSM menu (👁 181) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to choose the number of shots, then press to the right to make a selection.



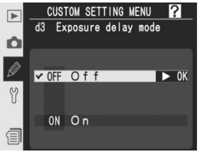
✎ The Memory Buffer (👁 44)

The following table shows the maximum number of shots that can be taken before the memory buffer fills and shooting slows:

Quality	Hi-speed crop: Off	Hi-speed crop: On
Uncompressed NEF (RAW)+JPEG	16	28
Compressed NEF (RAW)+JPEG		
Uncompressed NEF (RAW)	17	29
Compressed NEF (RAW)		
TIFF RGB	16	28
JPEG	22	38

The above figures assume that ISO sensitivity is set to ISO 100, long exposure noise reduction is off (👁 175), and that **Size priority** is selected for **JPEG compression** (👁 47).

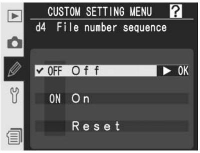
Custom Setting d3: *Exposure Delay Mode*



Shutter release can be delayed until about 0.4s after the shutter-release button is pressed, reducing camera shake in situations in which the least camera movement could result in blurred photographs (for example, microscope photography). Highlight **d3 Exp. delay mode** in the second level of the CSM menu (👁 181) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Option	Description
Off (default)	Shutter is released when shutter-release button is pressed.
On	Shutter is released about 0.4s after shutter-release button is pressed.

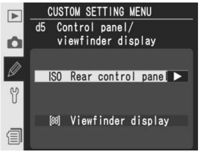
Custom Setting d4: *File Number Sequence*



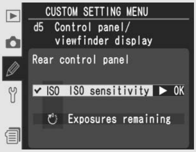
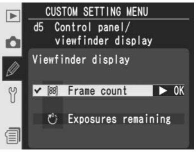
When a photograph is taken, the camera names the file new by adding one to the last file number used. This option controls whether file numbering continues from the last number used when a new folder is created, the memory card is formatted, or a new memory card is inserted in the camera. Highlight **d4 File No. Seq.** in the second level of the CSM menu (👁 181) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Option	Description
Off (default)	File numbering reset to 0001 when new folder is created, memory card is formatted or new memory card is inserted in camera.
On	When new folder is created, memory card is formatted, or new memory card inserted in camera, file numbering continues from last number used or from largest number in current folder, whichever is higher. If photograph is taken when current folder contains photograph numbered 9999, new folder will be created automatically and file numbering will begin again from 0001.
Reset	As for **On**, except that next photograph taken is assigned file number by adding one to largest file number in current folder. If selected folder contains no photographs, file numbering reset to 0001.

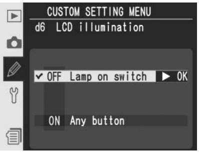
Custom Setting d5: *Control Panel/Viewfinder Display*



The options in this menu control the information displayed in the viewfinder and rear control panel. Highlight **d5 Cntrl panel/finder** in the second level of the CSM menu (👁 181) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press the multi selector to the right.

Option	Description
Rear control panel	Controls whether rear control panel shows ISO sensitivity or number of exposures remaining. Press multi selector up or down to highlight option, press to right to select:  CUSTOM SETTING MENU d5 Control panel/ viewfinder display Rear control panel ✓ ISO ISO sensitivity ▶ OK Exposures remaining • **ISO sensitivity** (default): Rear panel shows ISO sensitivity. • **Exposures remaining**: Rear panel shows number of exposures remaining. ISO sensitivity displayed only while **ISO** button is pressed.
Viewfinder display	Controls whether viewfinder shows frame count or number of exposures remaining (note that regardless of option selected, number of frames that can be stored in memory buffer will be shown while shutter-release button is pressed). Press multi selector up or down to highlight option, press to right to select:  CUSTOM SETTING MENU d5 Control panel/ viewfinder display Viewfinder display ✓ [88] Frame count ▶ OK Exposures remaining • **Frame count** (default): Viewfinder shows frame count. • **Exposures remaining**: Viewfinder shows number of exposures remaining.

Custom Setting d6: *LCD Illumination*

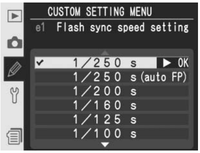


CUSTOM SETTING MENU
d6 LCD illumination
✓ OFF Lamp on switch ▶ OK
ON Any button

This option controls the control panel backlights (LCD illuminators). Highlight **d6 Illumination** in the second level of the CSM menu (181) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Option	Description
Lamp on switch (default)	Control panels illuminate only while power switch is rotated to ☀ position.
Any button	Control panels illuminate whenever exposure meters are active (note that this increases drain on battery).

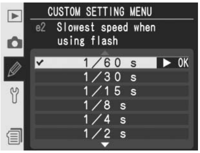
Custom Setting e1: *Flash Sync Speed Setting*



This option controls flash sync speed. Options range from 1/250 s (**1/250 s**, the default setting) and 1/60 s (**1/60 s**). To enable auto FP high-speed sync when using an SB-800 or SB-600 Speedlight, select **1/250 s (Auto FP)** (if an SB-800 or SB-600 is not attached when this option is selected, flash sync speed will be set to 1/250 s). When the camera shows a shutter speed of 1/250 s in exposure mode **P** or **A**, Auto FP High-Speed Sync will be activated if the actual shutter speed is faster than 1/250 s.

Highlight **e1 Flash sync speed** in the second level of the CSM menu (👁 181) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Custom Setting e2: *Slowest Speed When Using Flash*



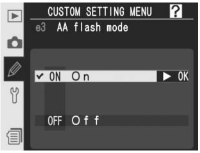
This option determines the slowest shutter speed possible when using front- or rear-curtain sync or red-eye reduction in programmed auto or aperture-priority auto exposure mode (regardless of the setting chosen, shutter speeds can be as slow as 30 s in shutter-priority auto and manual exposure modes or when the flash is set to slow sync, slow rear-curtain sync, or red-eye reduction with slow sync). Options range from 1/60 s (**1/60 s**, the default setting) and 30 s (**30 s**).

Highlight **e2 Flash shutter speed** in the second level of the CSM menu (👁 181) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Fixing Shutter Speed at the Flash Sync Speed Limit

To fix shutter speed at the sync speed limit in shutter-priority auto or manual exposure modes, select the shutter speed after the slowest possible shutter speed (30 s or bulb). An X will be displayed in the flash sync indicator in the top control panel.

Custom Setting e3: *AA Flash Mode*

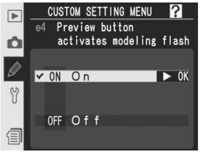


This option controls whether flash level is automatically adjusted for aperture when an external exposure meter is used with an SB-80DX or SB-28DX Speedlight (in the case of the SB-800, the flash mode chosen with the Speedlight is used regardless of the option chosen for Custom Setting e3). Highlight **e3 AA flash mode** in the second level of the CSM menu (📖 181) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Option	Description
On (default)	Flash level automatically adjusted for aperture when external exposure meter is used with SB-80DX or SB-28DX Speedlight (auto aperture).*
Off	Aperture specified manually using Speedlight controls (non-TTL auto).

* To use auto aperture with non-CPU lenses, specify maximum aperture of lens using **Non-CPU lens data** option in shooting menu.

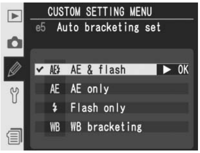
Custom Setting e4: *Preview Button Activates Modeling Flash*



This option determines whether optional Speedlights that support the Creative Lighting System (CLS) emit a modeling flash when the depth-of-field preview button is pressed. Highlight **e4 Modeling flash** in the second level of the CSM menu (📖 181) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Option	Description
On (default)	Modeling flash is emitted when depth-of-field is previewed (📖 87).
Off	No modeling flash emitted when depth-of-field preview button is pressed.

Custom Setting e5: *Auto Bracketing Set*


CUSTOM SETTING MENU
e5 Auto bracketing set
✓ AE⚡ AE & flash ▶ OK
AE AE only
⚡ Flash only
WB WB bracketing

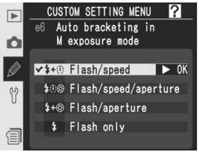
This option controls what settings are affected when auto bracketing is in effect. Highlight **e5 Auto BKT set** in the second level of the CSM menu (👁 181) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Option	Description
AE & flash (default)	Camera performs exposure and flash-level bracketing.
AE only	Camera performs exposure bracketing only.
Flash only	Camera performs flash-level bracketing only.
WB bracketing	Camera performs white balance bracketing.

White Balance Bracketing

White balance bracketing is not available at image quality settings of NEF (RAW) or NEF+JPEG.

Custom Setting e6: *Auto Bracketing in M Exposure Mode*

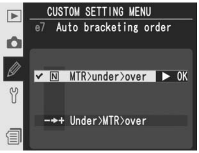

CUSTOM SETTING MENU
e6 Auto bracketing in M exposure mode
Flash/speed ▶ OK
Flash/speed/aperture
Flash/aperture
Flash only

This option controls what settings are affected when **AE & flash** or **AE only** is selected for Custom Setting e5 in manual exposure mode. Highlight **e6 Manual mode bkting** in the second level of the CSM menu (👁 181) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Option	Description
Flash/speed (default)	Camera varies shutter speed (Custom Setting e5 set to **AE only**) or shutter speed and flash level (Custom Setting e5 set to **AE & flash**).
Flash/speed/ aperture	Camera varies shutter speed and aperture (Custom Setting e5 set to **AE only**) or shutter speed, aperture, and flash level (Custom Setting e5 set to **AE & flash**).
Flash/ aperture	Camera varies aperture (Custom Setting e5 set to **AE only**) or aperture and flash level (Custom Setting e5 set to **AE & flash**).
Flash only	Camera varies flash level only (Custom Setting e5 set to **AE & flash**).

- If no flash is attached when Custom Setting b1 (**ISO auto**) is on, camera will vary ISO sensitivity only, regardless of setting selected.
- Flash bracketing performed only with i-TTL, D-TTL, or AA flash control.

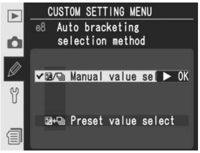
Custom Setting e7: *Auto Bracketing Order*


CUSTOM SETTING MENU
e7 Auto bracketing order
MTR>under>over ▶ OK
Under>MTR>over

This option controls the order in which bracketing is performed. Highlight **e7 Auto BKT order** in the second level of the CSM menu (👁 181) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Option	Description
MTR>under>over (default)	Bracketing performed in order described in "Bracketing" (👁 100).
Under>MTR>over	Bracketing proceeds in order from lowest to highest value.

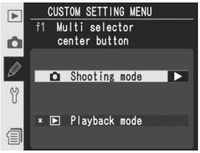
Custom Setting e8: *Auto Bracketing Selection Method*


CUSTOM SETTING MENU
e8 Auto bracketing selection method
Manual value sel ▶ OK
Preset value select

This option controls how the bracketing program is selected. Highlight **e8 Auto BKT selection** in the second level of the CSM menu (181) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

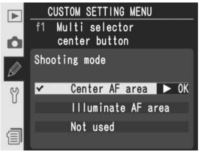
Option	Description
Manual value select (default)	Pressing BKT button, rotate main command dial to select number of shots, sub-command dial to select bracketing increment.
Preset value select	Press BKT button and rotate main command dial to turn bracketing on and off. Press BKT button and rotate sub-command dial to select number of shots and bracketing increment.

Custom Setting f1: *Multi Selector Center Button*


CUSTOM SETTING MENU
f1 Multi selector center button
Shooting mode ▶
Playback mode

This option determines what operations can be performed by pressing the center of the multi selector. Highlight **f1 Center button** in the second level of the CSM menu (181) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press the multi selector to the right.

Shooting Mode


CUSTOM SETTING MENU
f1 Multi selector center button
Shooting mode
Center AF area ▶ OK
Illuminate AF area
Not used

This option controls what operation can be performed by pressing the center of the multi selector when the camera is in shooting mode.

Using the Multi Selector

The multi selector can be used at any time when the monitor is on. The focus selector lock switch only takes effect when the monitor is off.

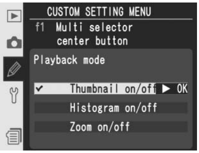
Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

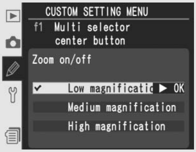
Option	Description
Center AF area (default)	Pressing center of multi selector selects center focus area or center focus-area group (group dynamic-AF). If **Pattern 2** is selected for Custom Setting a3 (**Group dynamic AF**), center of multi selector can be used to toggle between center focus area groups.
Illuminate AF area	Pressing center of multi selector illuminates active focus area or focus-area group (group dynamic-AF) in viewfinder.*
Not used	Pressing center of multi selector has no effect when camera is in shooting mode.*

* Center of multi selector can not be used to toggle between center focus-area groups when **Pattern 2** is selected for Custom Setting a3 (**Group dynamic AF**).

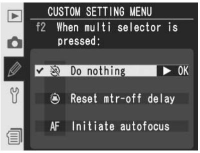
Playback Mode

This option controls what operation is performed when the center of the multi selector is pressed in playback mode. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.


CUSTOM SETTING MENU
f1 Multi selector center button
Playback mode
✓ Thumbnail on/off ▶ OK
Histogram on/off
Zoom on/off

Option	Description
Thumbnail on/off (default)	Press center of multi selector to toggle between single-image and thumbnail playback.
Histogram on/off	Press center of multi selector to turn histogram display on and off.
Zoom on/off	Press center of multi selector to zoom in on image, press again to return to full-frame display or thumbnail playback. When this option is selected, menu of zoom settings shown at right is displayed. Choose from **Low magnification**, **Medium magnification**, and **High magnification**.  CUSTOM SETTING MENU f1 Multi selector center button Zoom on/off ✓ Low magnificatio ▶ OK Medium magnification High magnification

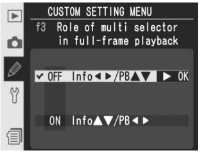
Custom Setting f2: *When Multi Selector Is Pressed*


CUSTOM SETTING MENU
f2 When multi selector is pressed:
✓ Do nothing ▶ OK
Reset mtr-off delay
AF Initiate autofocus

If desired, the multi selector can be used to activate the exposure meters or initiate autofocus. Highlight **f2 Multi selector** in the second level of the CSM menu (👁 181) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Option	Description
Do nothing (default)	Multi selector does not activate exposure meters or initiate autofocus.
Reset mtr-off delay	Pressing multi selector activates exposure meters.
Initiate autofocus	In AF-S or AF-C mode, pressing multi selector activates exposure meters. Camera focuses while multi selector is pressed.

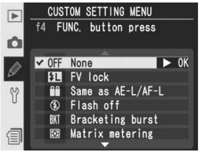
Custom Setting f3: *Role of Multi Selector in Full-Frame Playback*


CUSTOM SETTING MENU
f3 Role of multi selector in full-frame playback
✓ OFF Info◀▶/PB▲▼ ▶ OK
ON Info▲▼/PB◀▶

By default, pressing the multi selector up or down during playback displays the other images on the memory card, while pressing the multi selector left or right changes the photo information displayed. These roles can be reversed using Custom Setting f3. Highlight **f3 Photo info/playback** in the second level of the CSM menu (👁 181) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Option	Description
Info ◀▶/PB▲▼ (default)	Press multi selector up or down to display additional images, left or right to change photo info displayed.
Info▲▼/PB◀▶	Press multi selector up or down to change photo info displayed, left or right to display additional images.

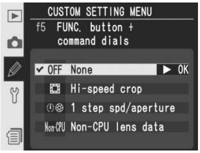
Custom Setting f4: *FUNC. Button Press*



This option controls the operation performed when the FUNC. button is pressed. Highlight **f4 FUNC. button** in the second level of the CSM menu (181) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Option	Description
None (default)	No operation is performed when FUNC. button is pressed.
FV lock	If attached Speedlight supports Creative Lighting System (CLS), flash value locks when FUNC. button is pressed. Press again to cancel FV lock.
Same as AE-L/AF-L	FUNC. button performs same functions as **AE-L/AF-L** button.
Flash off	Flash will not fire in photos taken while FUNC. button is pressed.
Bracketing burst	While FUNC. button is pressed, all shots in exposure or flash bracketing program will be taken each time shutter-release button is pressed. In continuous high-speed and continuous low-speed modes, camera will repeat bracketing burst while shutter-release button is held down. If white-balance bracketing is selected, camera will take photos at up to 8 fps (single or continuous high-speed mode) or 1–7 fps (continuous low-speed mode) and perform white balance bracketing on each frame.
Matrix metering	Matrix metering activated while FUNC. button is pressed.
Center-weighted	Center-weighted metering activated while FUNC. button is pressed.
Spot metering	Spot metering activated while FUNC. button is pressed.

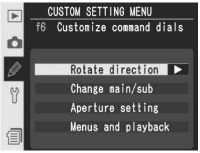
Custom Setting f5: *FUNC. Button + Command Dials*


CUSTOM SETTING MENU
f5 FUNC. button + command dials
✓ OFF None
▶ OK
Hi-speed crop
1 step spd/aperture
Non-CPU Non-CPU lens data

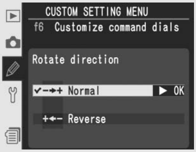
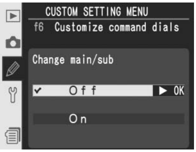
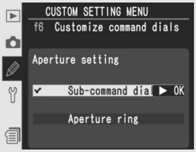
This option controls the operation performed by pressing the FUNC. button and rotating the command dials. Highlight **f5 FUNC. + command** in the second level of the CSM menu (👁 181) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

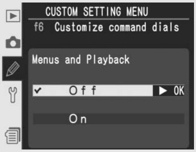
Option	Description
None (default)	No operation is performed if command dials are rotated while FUNC. button is pressed.
Hi-speed crop	FUNC. button and main command dial can be used to turn high-speed crop mode on and off (👁 41). Hi-speed crop mode can not be changed after first shot in multiple exposure.
1 step spd/ aperture	If FUNC. button is pressed when rotating command dials, changes to shutter speed (exposure modes S and M) and aperture (exposure modes A and M) are made in increments of 1 EV.
Non-CPU lens data	FUNC. button and command dials can be used to specify focal length and aperture of non-CPU lenses (👁 131).

Custom Setting f6: *Customize Command Dials*

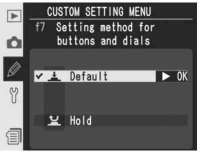

CUSTOM SETTING MENU
f6 Customize command dials
Rotate direction ▶
Change main/sub
Aperture setting
Menus and playback

This option controls the operation of the main and sub-command dials. Highlight **f6 Command dials** in the second level of the CSM menu (👁 181) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press the multi selector to the right.

Option	Description
Rotate direction	 CUSTOM SETTING MENU f6 Customize command dials Rotate direction ✓–·+ Normal ▶ OK +·– Reverse Controls direction of command dials when setting flexible program, shutter speed, easy exposure compensation, exposure mode, exposure compensation value, bracketing increment, and flash sync mode. Press multi selector up or down to highlight option, press to right to select: • **Normal** (default): Normal command dial operation. • **Reverse**: Reverses rotation of command dials.
Change main/sub	 CUSTOM SETTING MENU f6 Customize command dials Change main/sub ✓ Off ▶ OK On Exchanges functions of main and sub-command dials when setting shutter speed and aperture. Press multi selector up or down to highlight option, press to right to select: • **Off** (default): Main command dial controls shutter speed, sub-command dial controls aperture. • **On**: Main command dial controls aperture, sub-command dial controls shutter speed.
Aperture setting	 CUSTOM SETTING MENU f6 Customize command dials Aperture setting ✓ Sub-command dial ▶ OK Aperture ring Controls whether changes to aperture are made using lens aperture ring or command dials. Regardless of setting chosen, lens ring must be used to set aperture for non-CPU lenses, command dials to set aperture for type G lenses not equipped with aperture ring. Press multi selector up or down to highlight option, press to right to select: • **Sub-command dial** (default): Aperture can only be adjusted with sub-command dial (or main command dial if **Change main/sub** is **On**). • **Aperture ring**: Aperture can only be adjusted using lens aperture ring. Camera aperture display shows aperture in increments of 1 EV. This option is selected automatically when non-CPU lens is attached.

Option	Description
Menus and playback	 CUSTOM SETTING MENU f6 Customize command dials Menus and Playback ✔ Off ▶ OK On Controls functions performed by command dials during playback or when menus are displayed. Press multi selector up or down to highlight option, press to right to select: • **Off** (default): Multi selector used to choose picture displayed, highlight thumbnails, and navigate menus. • **On**: Main command dial performs same function as pressing multi selector left or right. Sub-command dial performs same function as pressing multi selector up or down. Note that this option has no effect on the roles played by the command dials during playback zoom. **Single-image playback**: main command dial is used to choose picture displayed, sub-command dial to display additional photo information. **Thumbnail playback**: main command dial moves cursor left or right, sub-command dial moves cursor up or down. **Menu navigation**: main command dial moves highlight bar up or down. Rotate sub-command dial to right to display sub-menu, to left to return to previous menu. To make selection, press multi selector to right, press center of multi selector, or press ENTER button.

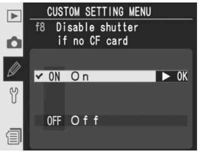
Custom Setting f7: *Setting Method for Buttons and Dials*



This option allows adjustments that are normally made by holding a button and rotating a command dial to be made by rotating the command dial after the button is released. Highlight **f7 Buttons and dials** in the second level of the CSM menu (☞ 181) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Option	Description
Default (default)	Changes to settings made by rotating command dial while button is held down.
Hold	Settings can be changed by rotating command dial after button is released. To exit, press button again, press shutter-release button halfway, press MODE, ±, BKT, ⚡, **ISO**, **QUAL**, or **WB** button, or (except when **No limit** is selected for Custom Setting c3 or optional adapter is used) wait for about 20 s.

Custom Setting f8: *Disable Shutter If No CF Card*



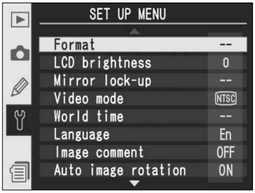
This option can be used to enable the shutter release when no memory card is inserted in the camera. Note that when photographs are being captured to a computer using Camera Control Pro (available separately), photographs are not recorded to the camera memory card and the shutter release will be enabled regardless of the setting chosen for this option.

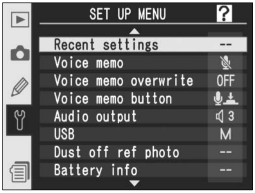
Highlight **f8 No CF card?** in the second level of the CSM menu (☞ 181) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

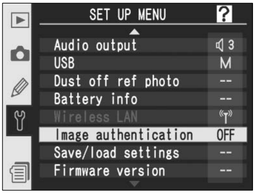
Option	Description
On (default)	Shutter-release button disabled when no memory card is inserted.
Off	Shutter-release button enabled even when no memory card is inserted.

The Setup Menu

The setup menu contains three pages of options:


SET UP MENU
Format --
LCD brightness 0
Mirror lock-up --
Video mode NTSC
World time --
Language En
Image comment OFF
Auto image rotation ON


SET UP MENU ?
Recent settings --
Voice memo
Voice memo overwrite OFF
Voice memo button
Audio output 3
USB M
Dust off ref photo --
Battery info --


SET UP MENU ?
Audio output 3
USB M
Dust off ref photo --
Battery info --
Wireless LAN
Image authentication OFF
Save/load settings --
Firmware version --

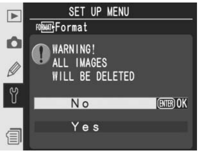
Option	👁
Format	214
LCD brightness	215
Mirror lock-up	215
Video mode	216
World time	18
Language	17
Image comment	217
Auto image rotation	218
Recent settings	219
Voice memo	150
Voice memo overwrite	151
Voice memo button	151
Audio output	153
USB	220
Dust off ref photo	221–222
Battery info	223
Wireless LAN*	223–231
Image authentication	231
Save/load settings	232
Firmware version	232

* Available only when optional WT-2/2A or WT-1/1A wireless transmitter is connected.

Using the Multi Selector

The multi selector can be used at any time when the monitor is on. The focus selector lock switch only takes effect when the monitor is off.

Format



SET UP MENU

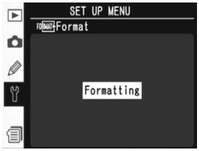
Format

WARNING!
ALL IMAGES
WILL BE DELETED

No ENTER OK

Yes

Memory cards must be formatted before first use. Formatting memory cards is also an effective way of deleting all pictures on the card. To format a memory card, highlight **Format** in the setup menu (213) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight one of the following options and then press the ENTER button:

Option	Description
No	Exit without formatting memory card.
Yes	Format memory card. Message shown at right displayed while formatting is in progress. *Do not turn the camera off, remove the batteries or memory card, or unplug the AC adapter (available separately) until formatting is complete and setup menu is displayed.*  SET UP MENU Format Formatting

During Formatting

Do not remove the memory card, remove the battery, or unplug the AC adapter (available separately) while formatting is in progress.

Before Formatting

Formatting memory cards permanently deletes all data they contain, including hidden and protected pictures and any other data that may be on the card. Before formatting, be sure to transfer to a computer any pictures you would like to keep.

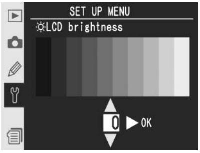
FAT 32

The D2Xs supports FAT 32, allowing use of memory cards with capacities of over 2 GB. FAT 16 is used when reformatting cards already formatted in FAT 16.

Two-Button Format

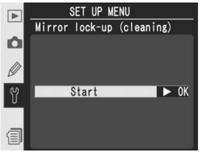
Memory cards can also be formatted with the FORMAT (MODE and 🗑) buttons (23).

LCD Brightness



To adjust monitor brightness, highlight **LCD brightness** in the setup menu (☞ 213) and press the multi selector to the right. The menu shown at right will be displayed. Press the multi selector up to increase brightness, down to decrease. The number to the right of the display indicates the current brightness level, with +2 the brightest setting and –2 the darkest. Press the multi selector to the right to complete the operation and return to the setup menu.

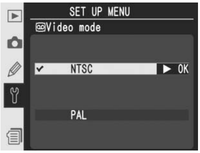
Mirror Lock-up



This option is used to lock the mirror in the up position to allow inspection or cleaning of the low-pass filter that protects the image sensor. See "Technical Notes: Caring for the Camera" (☞ 253). Highlighting this option and pressing the multi selector to the right displays the menu shown above. If the multi selector is pressed to the right again, a row of dashes ("**– – – – – –**") will be displayed in the top control panel. To raise the mirror, press the shutter-release button. The mirror will be locked in the up position the row of dashes will blink. The mirror will be lowered when the camera is turned off. Mirror lock up is not available when the battery level is 🔋 or lower or while a multiple exposure is being recorded.

Video Mode

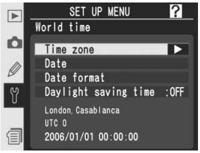
Before connecting your camera to a video device such as a television or VCR (☞ 234), choose a video mode setting that matches the video standard used in the device. Highlight **Video mode** in the setup menu (☞ 213) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.


SET UP MENU
Video mode
✓ NTSC ▶ OK
PAL

Option	Description
NTSC	Use when connecting camera to NTSC devices.
PAL	Use when connecting camera to PAL devices. Note that number of pixels in output is selectively reduced, causing drop in resolution.

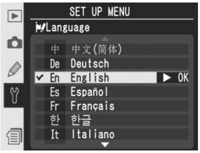
World Time

World time is used to set the camera clock to the current date and time. See "First Steps: Step 3—Basic setup" (☞ 17).


SET UP MENU ?
World time
Time zone ▶
Date
Date format
Daylight saving time :OFF
London, Casablanca
UTC 0
2006/01/01 00:00:00

Language

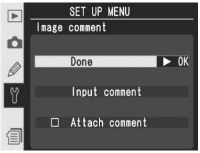
Choose the language for camera menus and messages from **中文(简体)** (Chinese), **Deutsch** (German), **English**, **Español** (Spanish), **Français** (French), **한글** (Korean), **Italiano** (Italian), 日本語 (Japanese), **Nederlands** (Dutch), and **Svenska** (Swedish). See "First Steps: Step 3—Basic setup" (☞ 18).


SET UP MENU
Language
中 中文(简体)
De Deutsch
✓ En English ▶ OK
Es Español
Fr Français
한 한글
It Italiano

Video Mode

The default video standard varies with the country or region of purchase.

Image Comment



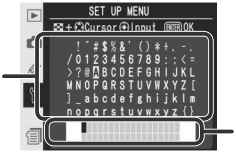
Using this option, brief texts comment can be added to photographs as they are taken. Comments can be viewed when the photographs are displayed using Capture NX (available separately) or PictureProject. The first twelve letters of the comment are also visible on the fourth page of the photo information display (☞ 140).

Highlight **Image comment** in the setup menu (☞ 213) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

Done: Save changes and return to the setup menu.

Input comment: The following dialog will be displayed. Enter a comment as described below.

Keyboard area
Use multi selector to highlight letters, press center of multi selector to select.


SET UP MENU
⊞+✣Cursor ⊛Input ENTER OK
! " # $ % & ' ( ) * + , - .
/ 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 : ; < =
> ? @ A B C D E F G H I J K L
M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z [
] _ a b c d e f g h i j k l m
n o p q r s t u v w x y z { }

Comment area
Comment appears here. To move cursor, press ⊞ button and use multi selector.

To move the cursor in the comment area, press the ⊞ button and use the multi selector. To enter a new letter at the current cursor position, use the multi selector to highlight the desired character in the keyboard area and press the center of the multi selector. To delete the character at the current cursor position, press the 🗑 button. To return to the setup menu without changing the comment, press the MENU button.

Comments can be up to thirty-six characters long. Any characters after the thirty-sixth will be deleted.

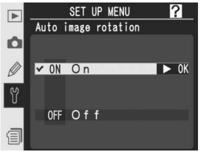
After editing the comment, press ENTER to return to the image comment menu.

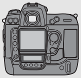
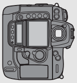
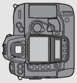
Attach comment: A comment is added to all photographs taken when this option is checked (✔). Highlight this option and press the multi selector to the right to toggle the check mark on or off.

Auto Image Rotation

The D2Xs is equipped with a built-in sensor that detects camera orientation. Information from this sensor can be embedded in photographs as they are taken, allowing portrait (tall) orientation photos to be rotated automatically during playback or when the pictures are displayed in Capture NX (available separately) or PictureProject.

Highlight **Auto image rotation** in the setup menu (☞ 213) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press to the right to make a selection.

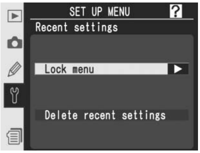


Option	Description
On (default)	Camera records whether shots are in landscape (wide) orientation, portrait (tall) orientation with the camera rotated 90° clockwise, or portrait orientation with the camera rotated 90° counter-clockwise.* If **On** is selected for **Rotate tall** during playback (☞ 167), portrait orientation photos will be displayed in portrait orientation in camera monitor.  Landscape (wide) orientation  Camera rotated 90° clockwise  Camera rotated 90° counter-clockwise
Off	Camera orientation not recorded. PictureProject and Capture NX display all photographs in landscape (wide) orientation. Choose this option when taking pictures with lens pointing up or down.

* In **CH** (continuous high speed) and **CL** (continuous low speed) modes (☞ 43), orientation recorded for first shot applies to all images in same burst, even if camera orientation is changed during shooting.

Recent Settings

The following options are available:

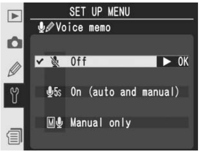

SET UP MENU
?
Recent settings
Lock menu ▶
Delete recent settings

Option	Description
Lock menu	Select **Yes** to lock Recent Settings menu so that no items can be added or removed, **No** to unlock menu.
Delete recent settings	Select **Yes** to delete all items from Recent Settings menu, **No** to exit without deleting items. Selecting **Yes** deletes recent settings even if menu is locked.

The Recent Settings menu can be customized by deleting all recent settings using **Delete recent settings**, selecting up to eight options in the shooting and Custom Settings menus in the order in which you wish them to appear, and then locking the menu using the **Lock menu** option. If more than eight items are selected before the menu is locked, only the eight most recent items will be displayed.

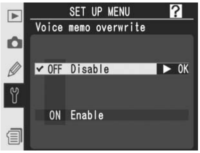
Voice Memo

Voice memo contains options for recording voice memos in shooting mode. See "Voice Memos" (👁 150).


SET UP MENU
Voice memo
✓ Off ▶ OK
5s On (auto and manual)
M Manual only

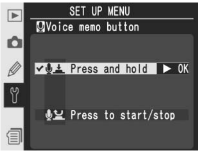
Voice Memo Overwrite

The option selected for **Voice memo overwrite** determines whether the voice memo for the last photograph recorded can be overwritten when the camera is in shooting mode. See "Voice Memos" (👁 151).


SET UP MENU
?
Voice memo overwrite
✓ OFF Disable ▶ OK
ON Enable

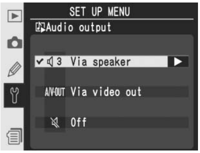
Voice Memo Button

This option controls operation of the 🎙 button. See "Voice Memos" (☞ 151).


SET UP MENU
Voice memo button
✓ Press and hold ▶ OK
Press to start/stop

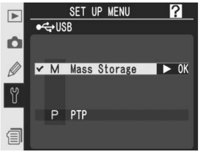
Audio Output

This menu contains output options for voice memos. See "Voice Memos" (☞ 153).


SET UP MENU
Audio output
✓ 3 Via speaker ▶
A/V-OUT Via video out
Off

USB

Before connecting the camera to a computer via USB (☞ 236), select the appropriate USB option as determined by the computer operating system and the software used.


SET UP MENU ?
USB
✓ M Mass Storage ▶ OK
P PTP

Operating system	PictureProject	Camera Control Pro
Windows XP Home Edition Windows XP Professional	Choose **PTP** or **Mass Storage**	Choose **PTP**
Mac OS X*		
Windows 2000 Professional	Choose **Mass Storage**	
Windows Millennium Edition (Me) Windows 98 Second Edition (SE)		Not supported

* Mac OS X version 10.3.9 or later required for Camera Control Pro.

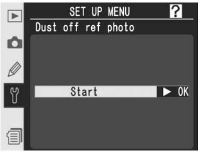
The default setting for **USB** is **Mass Storage**. To change the USB setting, highlight **USB** in the setup menu (☞ 213) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight the desired option, then press the multi selector to the right.

Dust Off Ref Photo

This option is used to acquire reference data for the Image Dust Off function in Capture NX (available separately; for more information, see the *Capture NX User's Manual*).

1 **Dust off ref photo** is only available when a CPU lens is mounted on the camera. We recommend using a lens with a focal length of at least 50 mm. If using a zoom lens, zoom in to the maximum telephoto position.

2 Highlight **Dust off ref photo** in the setup menu (👁 213) and press the multi selector to the right. The menu shown at right will be displayed.

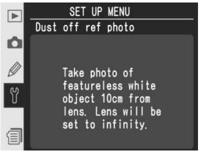


SET UP MENU

Dust off ref photo

Start ▶ OK

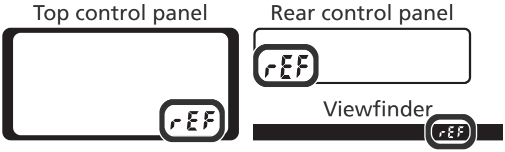
3 Press the multi selector to the right. Camera settings will be adjusted automatically. The message shown at right will be displayed, and rEF will be displayed in the viewfinder and control panels.



SET UP MENU

Dust off ref photo

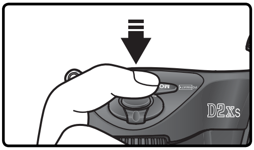
Take photo of featureless white object 10cm from lens. Lens will be set to infinity.



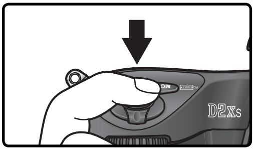
To cancel the operation and return to the setup menu, press the MENU button or press the multi selector to the left. The operation will also be cancelled when the camera or monitor is turned off.

Image Dust Off

The Image Dust Off feature in Capture NX (available separately) processes NEF (RAW) photographs to remove the effects of dust in the camera imaging system by comparing the images to the data acquired with **Dust off ref photo**. It is not available with TIFF (RGB) or JPEG images. The same reference data can be used for NEF (RAW) photographs taken with different lenses or at different apertures.

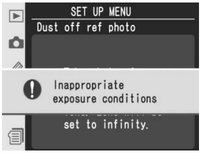


4 With the lens ten centimeters (four inches) from a bright, featureless white object, frame the object so that nothing else is visible in the viewfinder and press the shutter-release button halfway. In autofocus mode, focus will automatically be set to infinity; in manual focus mode, set focus to infinity manually before pressing the shutter-release button. If using the aperture ring to set aperture, choose the minimum setting (largest f/-number).



5 Press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down to acquire Image Dust Off reference data (note that noise reduction turns on automatically when the subject is poorly lit, increasing the amount of time needed to record the data). The monitor turns off when the shutter-release button is pressed.

If the reference object is too bright or too dark, the camera may be unable to acquire Image Dust Off reference data and the message shown at right will be displayed. Choose another reference object and repeat the process from Step 3.



SET UP MENU

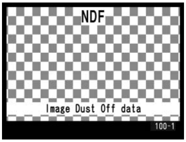
Dust off ref photo

Inappropriate exposure conditions

set to infinity.

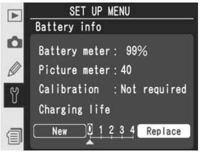
Image Dust Off Reference Data

Image Dust Off reference data are recorded to the memory card at an image quality of JPEG Fine and an image size of Large. When the resulting image is played back on the camera, a grid pattern is displayed and voice memos can not be recorded. Files created with **Dust off ref photo** can not be viewed using computer imaging software.



Battery Info

To view information on the EN-EL4a rechargeable Li-ion battery currently inserted in the camera, highlight **Battery info** in the setup menu (☞ 213) and press the multi selector to the right.

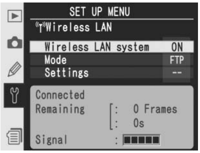


SET UP MENU
Battery info
Battery meter : 99%
Picture meter : 40
Calibration : Not required
Charging life
New 0 1 2 3 4 Replace

Option	Description
Battery meter	Current battery level expressed as a percentage (☞ 27).
Picture meter	Number of times shutter has been released with current battery since battery was last charged. Note that camera may sometimes release shutter without recording photograph, for example when measuring value for preset white balance.
Calibration	• **Required**: due to repeated use and recharging, calibration is required to ensure that battery level can be measured accurately; recalibrate battery before charging (see MH-21 Quick Charger instructions for details). • **Not required**: calibration not required.
Charging life	Five-level display showing battery age. 0 (**New**) indicates that battery performance has not been affected; 4 (**Replace**) indicates that battery has reached end of charging life and should be replaced.

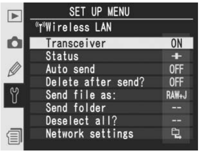
Wireless LAN

This option is only available when an optional WT-2/2A or WT-1/1A wireless transmitter is attached. To adjust wireless LAN settings, highlight **Wireless LAN** in the setup menu (☞ 213) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option and then press the multi selector to the right. The options available vary depending on whether the WT-2/2A or WT-1/1A is attached. See the manual provided with the wireless transmitter for details.



SET UP MENU
Wireless LAN
Wireless LAN system ON
Mode FTP
Settings --
Connected
Remaining : 0 Frames
: 0s
Signal :

WT-2/2A



SET UP MENU
Wireless LAN
Transceiver ON
Status +
Auto send OFF
Delete after send? OFF
Send file as: RAW+J
Send folder --
Deselect all? --
Network settings

WT-1/1A

Wireless LAN Options for the WT-2/2A

Settings for the WT-2/2A differ depending on whether the transmitter is being used to send data to an ftp server or to connect to a computer running Camera Control Pro (available separately).

Option			FTP	Camera Control Pro
Wireless LAN system			Choose **On**	Choose **On**
Mode			Choose **FTP**	Choose **PTP/IP**
Settings	**Network settings**	**Wireless**	Required	Required
		TCP/IP	Required	Required
		FTP	Required	Not available
	Pairing options		Not available	Required
	Auto send		Available	Not available
	Delete after send?		Available	Not available
	Send file as		Available	Not available
	Send folder		Available	Not available
	Deselect all?		Available	Not available

✎ Settings for the WT-2/2A and WT-1/1A

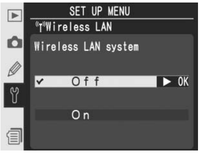
Even where the same options are available for both devices, wireless LAN settings must be adjusted separately for the WT-2/2A and WT-1/1A.

✎ USB

When using a wireless transmitter, set the **USB** option in the camera setup menu to **PTP** (☞ 220).

Wireless LAN system

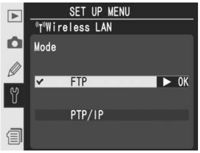
Turn the WT-2/2A on or off. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option and then press the multi selector to the right.


SET UP MENU
Wireless LAN
Wireless LAN system
✓ Off ▶ OK
On

Option	Description
Off (default)	WT-2/2A off; wireless link unavailable.
On	WT-2/2A on; wireless link available.

Mode

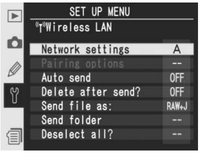
Press the multi selector up or down to highlight **FTP** or **PTP/IP** and then press the multi selector to the right.


SET UP MENU
Wireless LAN
Mode
✓ FTP ▶ OK
PTP/IP

Option	Description
FTP (default)	Use when connecting to ftp server.
PTP/IP	Use when controlling camera remotely. Requires Camera Control Pro (available separately).

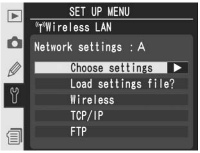
Settings

The settings menu contains the options listed below. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option and then press the multi selector to the right.


SET UP MENU
Wireless LAN
Network settings A
Pairing options --
Auto send OFF
Delete after send? OFF
Send file as: RAW+J
Send folder --
Deselect all? --

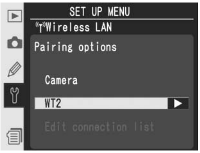
Option	👁
Network settings	226
Pairing options	226
Auto send	227
Delete after send?	227

Option	👁
Send file as	228
Send folder	228
Deselect all?	228


SET UP MENU
Wireless LAN
Network settings : A
Choose settings
Load settings file?
Wireless
TCP/IP
FTP

Network settings: Adjust settings for connection to a wireless network. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option and then press the multi selector to the right.

Option	Description
Choose settings	**Wireless**, **TCP/IP**, and **FTP** settings are stored in one of four banks (A, B, C, and D). Store settings for different networks in different banks and switch between them using this menu. Descriptive captions can be added to bank names as described on page 170.
Load settings file?	Load **Wireless**, **TCP/IP**, and **FTP** settings from camera memory card.
Wireless	Adjust SSID, ad hoc, encryption, and compatibility settings for connection to wireless network.
TCP/IP	Adjust or view TCP/IP settings, including IP address, DNS, and gateway settings.
FTP	Enter password and user ID and adjust settings for connection to ftp server.

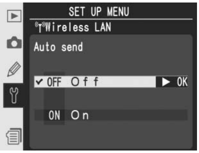

SET UP MENU
Wireless LAN
Pairing options
Camera
WT2
Edit connection list

Pairing options: Pair the camera with computers running Camera Control Pro (available separately). Once paired with the camera, the computer will automatically connect when Camera Control Pro is started, allowing the camera to be controlled remotely from the computer. The camera can store up to ten pairs of connections (note that each computer can control only one camera at a time, and that each camera can be controlled by only one computer at a time). Before pairing the camera with a computer, adjust wireless network settings appropriately.

Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option and then press the multi selector to the right.

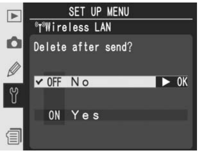
Option	Description
Camera	Assign name to camera. Camera will be registered with computer under this name when pairing begins.
Edit connection list	Edit list of computers with which camera is paired. Computers can be deleted from list or pairing can be suspended by selecting **Disable** (remember to enable pairing before reconnecting).

Auto send: Choose whether to transmit photographs to the server as they are taken. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option and then press the multi selector to the right.



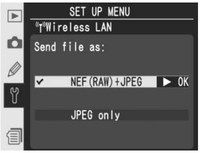
Option	Description
Off (default)	Photos are not transmitted automatically after shooting. Photos can be selected for transmission in playback mode.
On	Photos transmitted to server automatically after recording.

Delete after send: Choose whether to delete photographs after transmission. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option and then press the multi selector to the right.



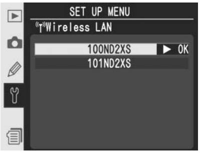
Option	Description
No (default)	Photos are not deleted after transmission.
Yes	Photos deleted after transmission. Regardless of setting selected for Custom Setting d4 (**File No. Seq.**), file numbering continues from last number used when new folder is created or memory card inserted.

Send file as: When sending images taken at settings of **NEF (RAW) + JPEG fine**, **NEF (RAW) + JPEG normal**, or **NEF (RAW) + JPEG basic**, choose whether to send both NEF and JPEG files or only the JPEG files. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option and then press the multi selector to the right.

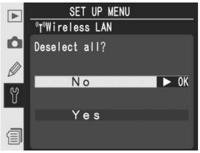

SET UP MENU
Wireless LAN
Send file as:
✔ NEF (RAW) +JPEG ▶ OK
JPEG only

Option	Description
NEF(RAW)+JPEG (default)	Send both NEF and JPEG files.
JPEG only	Send JPEG files only.

Send folder: Entire folders can be selected for transmission to the server. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight a folder and then press the multi selector to the right to begin transmission of the selected folder and all files it contains.


SET UP MENU
Wireless LAN
100ND2XS ▶ OK
101ND2XS

Deselect all: Remove "send," "sending," and "sent" marking from all images on the memory card. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press the multi selector to the right.


SET UP MENU
Wireless LAN
Deselect all?
No ▶ OK
Yes

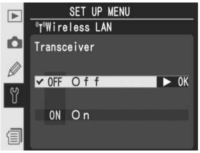
Option	Description
No	Exit without removing "send," "sending," and "sent" marking.
Yes	Remove "send," "sending," and "sent" marking from all images.

Wireless LAN Options for the WT-1/1A

The following options are available when the WT-1/1A is connected.

Transceiver

Turn the WT-1/1A transceiver on or off. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option and then press the multi selector to the right.

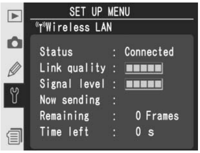


SET UP MENU
Wireless LAN
Transceiver
✓ OFF Off ▶ OK
ON On

Option	Description
Off (default)	Transceiver off. Camera can not communicate with server.
On	Transceiver on. Camera can communicate with server.

Status

Shows the current status of the link between the WT-1/1A and the server. Press the multi selector to the right to return to the wireless LAN menu.

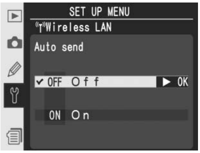


SET UP MENU
Wireless LAN
Status : Connected
Link quality : ▮▮▮▮▮
Signal level : ▮▮▮▮▮
Now sending :
Remaining : 0 Frames
Time left : 0 s

Option	Description
Status	Status of server link.
Link quality	Five-level indicator of link quality.
Signal level	Five-level indicator of signal strength.
Now sending	Name of file currently being sent.
Remaining	Number of frames yet to be sent.
Time left	Estimated time needed to send remaining data.

Auto Send

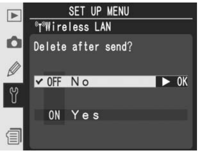
Choose whether to transmit photographs to the server as they are taken. See "Auto send" (📖 227).



SET UP MENU
Wireless LAN
Auto send
✓ OFF Off ▶ OK
ON On

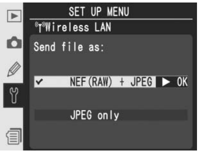
Delete After Send?

Choose whether to delete photographs after transmission. See "Delete after send" (227).


SET UP MENU
Wireless LAN
Delete after send?
✓ OFF No ▶ OK
ON Yes

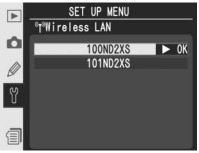
Send File As

When sending images taken at settings of **NEF (RAW) + JPEG fine**, **NEF (RAW) + JPEG normal**, or **NEF (RAW) + JPEG basic**, choose whether to send both NEF and JPEG files or only the JPEG files. See "Send file as" (228).


SET UP MENU
Wireless LAN
Send file as:
✓ NEF (RAW) + JPEG ▶ OK
JPEG only

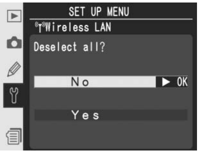
Send Folder

Entire folders can be selected for transmission to the server. See "Send folder" (228).


SET UP MENU
Wireless LAN
100ND2XS ▶ OK
101ND2XS

Deselect All?

Remove "send," "sending," and "sent" marking from all images on the memory card. See "Deselect all" (228).


SET UP MENU
Wireless LAN
Deselect all?
No ▶ OK
Yes

Settings for the WT-2/2A and WT-1/1A

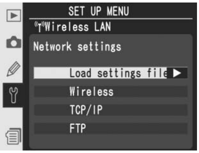
Even where the same options are available for both devices, wireless LAN settings must be adjusted separately for the WT-2/2A and WT-1/1A.

USB

When using a wireless transmitter, set the **USB** option in the camera setup menu to **PTP** (220).

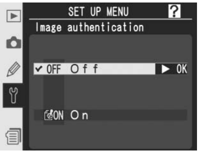
Network Settings

Adjust network settings for connection to the server. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option and then press the multi selector to the right.



Option	Description
Load settings file?	Load **Wireless**, **TCP/IP**, and **FTP** settings from camera memory card.
Wireless	Adjust settings for connection to wireless network.
TCP/IP	Adjust TCP/IP settings, including IP address, DNS, and gateway settings.
FTP	Enter password and user ID and adjust settings for connection to ftp server.

Image Authentication



Selecting **On** for this option embeds image authentication information into photographs as they are taken, allowing alterations to the image to be detected using Nikon's optional Image Authentication software (☞ 250). To turn image authentication on or off, highlight **Image authentication** in the setup menu (☞ 213) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option and press the multi selector right to select. Photographs taken with image authentication on are marked by a ✎ icon on page 2 of the playback information display (☞ 139).

Image Transfer

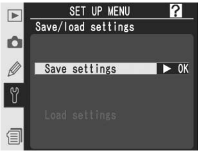
Modifications to color profiles or IPTC information made in PictureProject during transfer will be detected by Nikon's Image Authentication software. Turn auto embed options off when transferring photographs for use with Image Authentication. Image authentication information is not embedded in TIFF photographs recorded directly to a computer using Camera Control Pro (available separately).

Copies

Image authentication information is not embedded in copies created with Trim (☞ 123) or Image overlay (☞ 118).

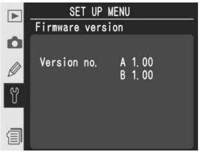
Save/Load Settings

Select **Save settings** to save all camera settings except the date and time (☞ 17) and monitor brightness (☞ 215) to the camera memory card. Saved settings can be restored by selecting **Load settings**. To turn save or load settings, highlight **Save/load settings** in the setup menu (☞ 213) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option and press the multi selector right to select. Note that this option is unavailable when no memory card is inserted in the camera. The **Load settings** option will be unavailable if the current memory card does not contain saved settings.



Firmware Version

To display the current camera firmware version, highlight **Firmware version** in the setup menu (☞ 213) and press the multi selector to the right. Press the multi selector to the left to return to the setup menu.



Version no. A 1.00
B 1.00

Saved Settings

Settings are saved to a file named "NCSETUP0" on the camera memory card. Deleting or modifying this file will prevent the camera from loading the saved settings.

Connections

Connecting to External Devices

Television Playback
👁 234

Connecting to a Computer
👁 235–237

Connecting to a Printer
👁 238–242

Photographs and camera menus can be displayed on a television screen or recorded to video tape. If the supplied software is installed, the camera can be connected to a computer and photographs copied to disk for editing, viewing, printing, or long-term storage. When the camera is connected to a PictBridge-compatible printer, pictures can be printed directly from the camera.

Television Playback
Read this section for information on connecting the camera to a television or VCR.

Connecting to a Computer
This section describes how to connect the camera to a computer.

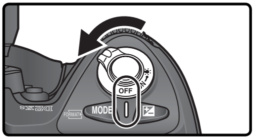
Connecting to a Printer
Read this section for information on connecting the camera to a PictBridge-compatible printer.

Television Playback

Connecting the Camera to a Video Device

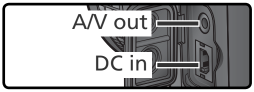
The supplied EG-D2 audio/video (A/V) cable can be used to connect the D2Xs to a television or VCR for playback or recording.

1 Turn the camera off.

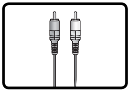


> ✓ *The EG-D2*
>
> Turn the camera off before connecting or disconnecting the EG-D2.

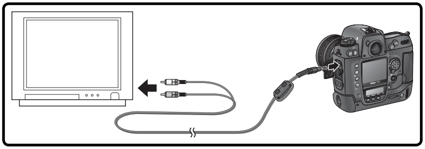
2 Open the cover protecting the A/V-out and DC-in connectors.

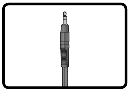


3 Connect the EG-D2. Insert the black plug to the camera A/V-out connector. Connect the yellow plug to the video-in jack on the television or VCR and the white plug to the audio-in jack.



Connect to video device





Connect to camera

4 Tune the television to the video channel.

5 Turn the camera on. During playback, images will be displayed on the television screen or recorded to video tape; the camera monitor will remain off. Note that the television may not be able to display the entire image when pictures are played back.

Use an AC Adapter

Use of an EH-6 AC adapter (available separately) is recommended for extended playback. When the EH-6 is connected, the camera monitor-off delay will be fixed at ten minutes and the exposure meters will no longer turn off automatically.

Video Mode (👁 216)

Be sure that the video standard matches the standard used in the video device. Note that resolution will drop when images are output on a PAL device.

Audio Output (👁 153)

Set **Via VIDEO OUT** to play back or record voice memos on the video device.

Connecting to a Computer

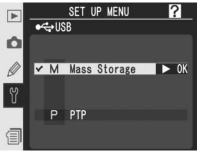
Data Transfer and Camera Control

The supplied UC-E4 USB cable can be used to connect the camera to a computer. Once the camera is connected, PictureProject can be used to copy photographs to the computer, where they can be browsed, viewed, and retouched. The camera can also be used with other applications available separately from Nikon, including Capture NX, which supports batch processing and more advanced image editing options, and Camera Control Pro, which can be used to control the camera directly from the computer.

Before Connecting the Camera

Install the necessary software after reading the manuals and reviewing the system requirements. To ensure that data transfer is not interrupted, be sure the camera battery is fully charged. If in doubt, charge the battery before use or use an EH-6 AC adapter (available separately).

Before connecting the camera, set the USB option in the setup menu (👁 220) according to the computer operating system and the software used:



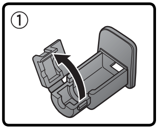
Operating system	PictureProject	Camera Control Pro
Windows XP Home Edition Windows XP Professional	Choose **PTP** or **Mass Storage**	Choose **PTP**
Mac OS X*		
Windows 2000 Professional	Choose **Mass Storage**†	
Windows Millennium Edition (Me) Windows 98 Second Edition (SE)		Not supported

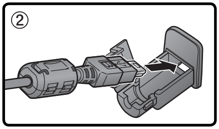
* Mac OS X version 10.3.9 or later required for Camera Control Pro.

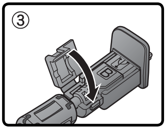
† Do NOT select **PTP**. If **PTP** is selected when the camera is connected, the Windows hardware wizard will be displayed. Click **Cancel** to exit the wizard, and then disconnect the camera. Be sure to select **Mass storage** before reconnecting the camera.

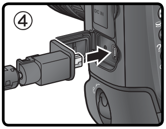
✓ The USB Cable Clip

To prevent cable from being disconnected, fasten the clip as shown.


①


②

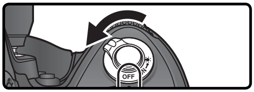

③


④

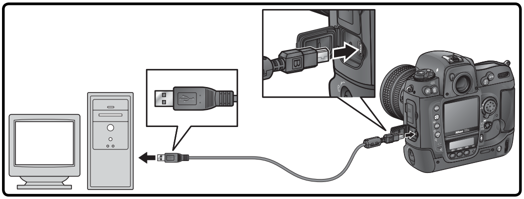
Connecting the USB Cable

1 Turn the computer on and wait for it to start up.

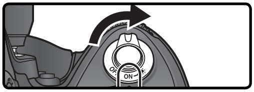
2 Turn the camera off.

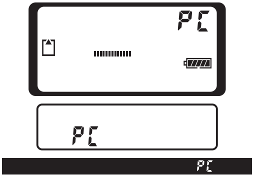


3 Connect the UC-E4 USB cable as shown. Connect the camera directly to the computer; do not connect the cable via a USB hub or keyboard.

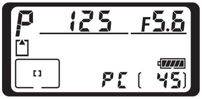


4 Turn the camera on. If **Mass Storage** is selected for **USB**, PC will be displayed in the rear control panel and viewfinder. The aperture display in the top control panel will also show PC, and the PC mode indicator will flash (if **PTP** is selected, the camera displays will only change when Camera Control Pro is running). Photographs can be transferred to the computer as described in the *PictureProject Reference Manual* (on CD).





If Camera Control Pro is running, the top control panel will show PC in place of the number of exposures remaining. Any photographs taken will be recorded to the computer hard disk rather than the camera memory card. See the *Camera Control Pro User's Manual* for more information.



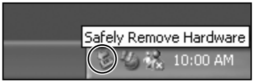
✓ Do Not Turn the Camera Off

Do not turn the camera off while transfer is in progress.

Disconnecting the Camera

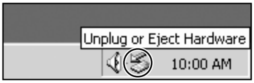
If **PTP** is selected for **USB** (☞ 220), the camera can be turned off and the USB cable disconnected once transfer is complete. If the **USB** option in the camera setup menu is still at its default setting of **Mass Storage**, the camera must first be removed from the system as described below.

Windows XP Home Edition/Windows XP Professional


Safely Remove Hardware
10:00 AM

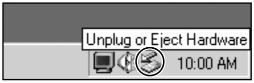
Click the "Safely Remove Hardware" icon () in the taskbar and select **Safely remove USB Mass Storage Device** from the menu that appears.

Windows 2000 Professional


Unplug or Eject Hardware
10:00 AM

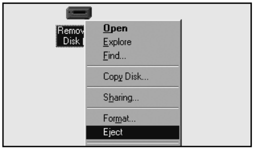
Click the "Unplug or Eject Hardware" icon () in the taskbar and select **Stop USB Mass Storage Device** from the menu that appears.

Windows Millennium Edition (Me)


Unplug or Eject Hardware
10:00 AM

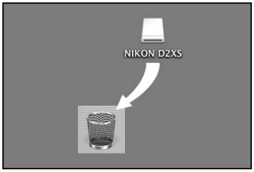
Click the "Unplug or Eject Hardware" icon () in the taskbar and select **Stop USB Disk** from the menu that appears.

Windows 98 Second Edition (SE)


Remov
Disk
Open
Explore
Find...
Copy Disk...
Sharing...
Format...
Eject

In My Computer, click with the right mouse button on the removable disk corresponding to the camera and select **Eject** from the menu that appears.

Macintosh

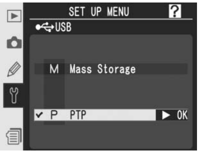


Drag the camera volume ("NIKON D2XS") into the Trash.

Connecting to a Printer

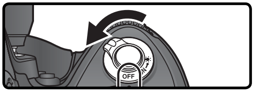
When the camera is connected to a PictBridge-compatible printer via the supplied UC-E4 USB cable, selected JPEG images can be printed directly from the camera. Before connecting the printer, confirm that it supports PictBridge. If possible, connect the camera to an EH-6 AC adapter (available separately) to reduce the drain on the battery.

1 Set the **USB** option in the setup menu (☞ 220) to **PTP** (photographs can not be printed at the default setting of **Mass Storage**).

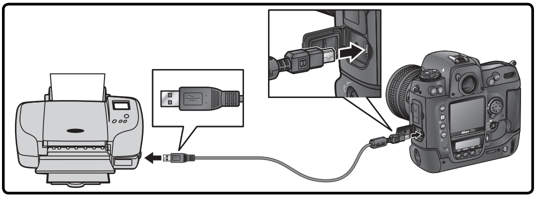


2 Turn the printer on.

3 Turn the camera off.

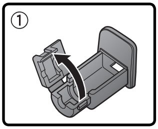


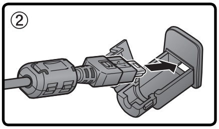
4 Connect the UC-E4 USB cable as shown. Connect the camera directly to the printer; do not connect the cable via a USB hub.

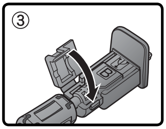


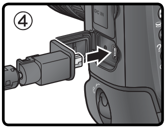
✓ The USB Cable Clip

To prevent cable from being disconnected, fasten the clip as shown.





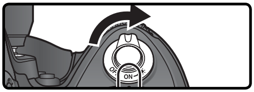


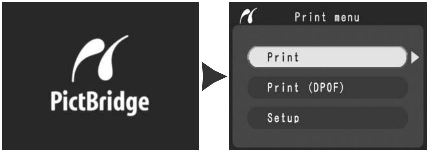


✎ Taking Pictures for Direct Printing

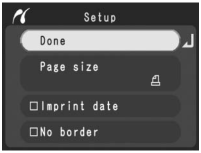
When taking photographs to be printed without modification, set **Color space** to **sRGB** (☞ 70).

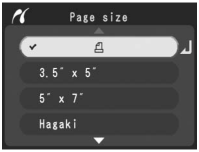
5 Turn the camera on. A welcome screen will be displayed in the monitor, followed by a PictBridge menu.





6 Press the multi selector up or down to highlight **Setup** and press the multi selector to the right. The menu shown at right will be displayed; press the multi selector up or down to highlight an option, then press the multi selector to the right to make the selection.



Option	Description
Done	Save changes and return to PictBridge menu.
Page size	Choose page size. Press multi selector up or down to highlight ⎙ (default size for current printer), **3.5"x5"**, **5"x7"**, **Hagaki**, **100mmx150mm**, **4"x6"**, **8"x 10"**, **Letter**, **A3**, or **A4**, then press to right to select. 
Imprint date	Check to print date of recording on each picture.
No border	Check to print pictures without white border (some printers will ignore this option).

7 To select photographs for printing or create an index print of all JPEG images on the memory card, highlight **Print** in the PictBridge menu and press the multi selector to the right (☞ 240–241). To print the print order created with the playback **Print set** option (☞ 163), highlight **Print (DPOF)** and press the multi selector to the right (☞ 242).

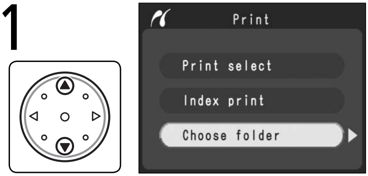
Using the Multi Selector

The multi selector can be used at any time when the monitor is on. The focus selector lock switch only takes effect when the monitor is off.

Printing Selected Photographs

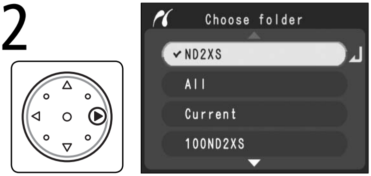
To print selected photos, highlight **Print** in the PictBridge menu and press the multi selector to the right. The menu shown in Step 1 will be displayed.

1


Print
Print select
Index print
Choose folder

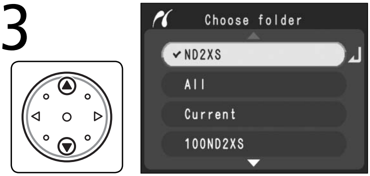
Highlight **Choose folder**.

2


Choose folder
✓ND2XS
All
Current
100ND2XS

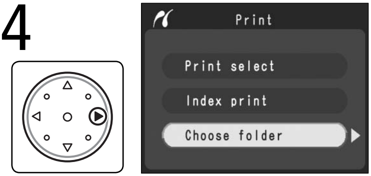
Display list of folders.

3


Choose folder
✓ND2XS
All
Current
100ND2XS

Highlight folder.*

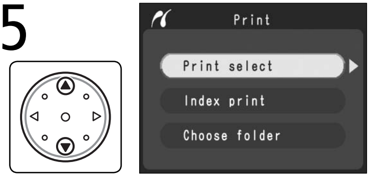
4


Print
Print select
Index print
Choose folder

Return to print menu.

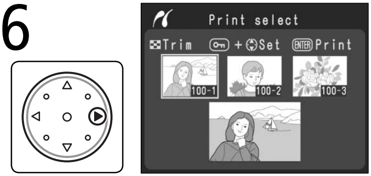
* To display photos in all folders, highlight **All**. To make selection from one folder only, highlight folder name.

5


Print
Print select
Index print
Choose folder

Highlight **Print select**.†

6


Print select
Trim
+ Set
ENTER Print
100-1
100-2
100-3

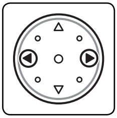
Display photos in current folder.

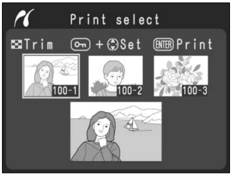
† To create index print listing all JPEG images in current folder as small thumbnail images, highlight **Index print** and press multi selector to right (do not select ⎙ for **Page size** when creating index prints). Photos in current folder will be displayed, with JPEG images marked by ⎙ icon. Press ENTER to begin printing. To interrupt printing and exit to PictBridge menu, press ENTER button again.

Selecting Photographs for Printing

NEF (RAW) and TIFF (RGB) images are not displayed in the **Print select** menu and can not be selected.

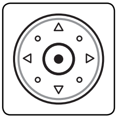
7

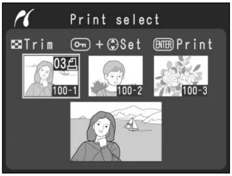



Print select
Trim
⊶ + Set
ENTER Print
100-1
100-2
100-3

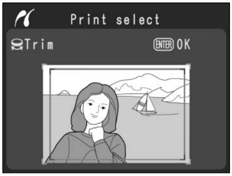
Scroll through photos. Current photo shown at bottom of display.

8




Print select
Trim
⊶ + Set
ENTER Print
03
100-1
100-2
100-3

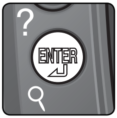
Select photo and set number of prints to 1. Selected photos are marked by ⎙ icon. Press ⊶ button and press multi selector up or down to specify number of prints (up to 99).‡

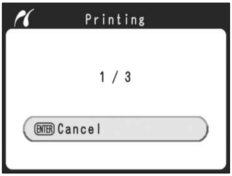

Print select
Trim
ENTER OK

‡ If printer supports cropping, photo can be cropped for printing by pressing ⊞ button. Dialog shown at right will be displayed; rotate main command dial to zoom in or out and use multi selector to scroll to other areas of image (note that prints may become slightly "grainy" when highly enlarged). When desired area is framed in monitor, press ENTER button to return to print selection dialog. Only selected portion of photo will be included when image is printed.

9 Repeat steps 7 and 8 to select additional pictures. To deselect picture, highlight and press center of multi selector. To exit to PictBridge menu without printing, press MENU button.

10




Printing
1 / 3
ENTER Cancel

Begin printing. To cancel and return to PictBridge menu before all images have been printed, press ENTER button again. Turn camera off and disconnect USB cable when printing is complete.

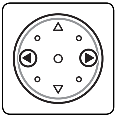
Print Times

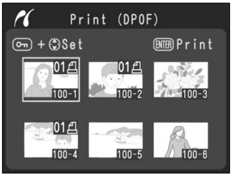
Larger images require more time to print.

Printing the Current Print Order

To print the current print order, highlight **Print (DPOF)** in the PictBridge menu and press the multi selector to the right.

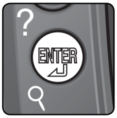
1

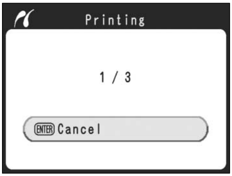




View photos in current folder. Pictures in print order are indicated by ⎙ icon and number of prints; print order can be changed as described on page 164. To exit to PictBridge menu without printing, press MENU button.

2





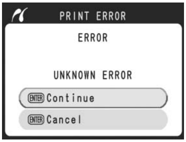
Begin printing. To cancel and return to PictBridge menu before all images have been printed, press ENTER button again. Turn camera off and disconnect USB cable when printing is complete.

“Data Imprint”/“Imprint Date”

Selecting **Print (DPOF)** resets the **Data imprint** and **Imprint date** options for the current print order (☞ 164). To print the date of recording on photographs, select **Imprint date** in the PictBridge **Setup** menu.

Error Messages

If the dialog shown at right is displayed, an error has occurred. After checking the printer and resolving any problems as directed in the printer manual, press the multi selector up or down to highlight **Continue** and press the multi selector to the right to resume printing. Select **Cancel** to exit without printing the remaining images.



ERROR

UNKNOWN ERROR

Print Set (☞ 163)

To create a DPOF print order before printing, use the **Print set** option in the playback menu.

Technical Notes

Camera Care, Options, and Resources

This chapter covers the following topics:

Optional Accessories
A list of the lenses and other accessories available for the D2Xs. See the latest Nikon catalogs and websites for additional information.

Caring for the Camera
Information on storage and maintenance.

Troubleshooting
A list of the error messages displayed by your camera and how to deal with them.

Specifications
Principal specifications for the D2Xs.

Lenses for the D2Xs

The D2Xs is compatible with a variety of AF Nikkor lenses for 35-mm film cameras, including wide-angle, telephoto, zoom, micro, defocus image control (DC), and regular lenses with focal lengths of 14–600 mm (👁 246). Note that IX Nikkor CPU lenses can not be used with the D2Xs.

The lenses that can be used with the D2Xs are listed below.

Camera setting / Lens/accessory		Focus mode			Exposure mode		Metering system		
		S C	M (with electronic range finder)	M	P S	A M	▣		(•) ⊡
							3D	Color	
CPU lenses[1]	Type G or D AF Nikkor[2] AF-S, AF-I Nikkor	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	—	✔[3]
	PC-Micro Nikkor 85 mm f/2.8D[4]	—	✔[5]	✔	—	✔[6]	✔	—	✔[3]
	AF-S/AF-I Teleconverter[7]	✔[8]	✔[8]	✔	✔	✔	✔	—	✔[3]
	Other AF Nikkor (except lenses for F3AF)	✔[9]	✔[9]	✔	✔	✔	—	✔	✔[3]
	AI-P Nikkor	—	✔[10]	✔	✔	✔	—	✔	✔[3]
Non-CPU lenses[11]	AI-, AI-S, or Series E Nikkor[12] AI modified Nikkor	—	✔[10]	✔	—	✔[13]	—	✔[14]	✔[15]
	Medical Nikkor 120 mm f/4	—	✔	✔	—	✔[16]	—	—	—
	Reflex Nikkor	—	—	✔	—	✔[13]	—	—	✔[15]
	PC-Nikkor	—	✔[5]	✔	—	✔[17]	—	—	✔
	AI-type Teleconverter[18]	—	✔[8]	✔	—	✔[13]	—	✔[14]	✔[15]
	TC-16A AF Teleconverter	—	✔[8]	✔	—	✔[13]	—	✔[14]	✔[15]
	PB-6 Bellows Focusing Attachment[19]	—	✔[8]	✔	—	✔[20]	—	—	✔
	Auto extension rings (PK-series 11A, 12, or 13; PN-11)	—	✔[8]	✔	—	✔[13]	—	—	✔

[1] IX-Nikkor lenses can not be used.

[2] Vibration Reduction (VR) supported with VR lenses.

[3] Spot metering meters selected focus area.

[4] The camera's exposure metering and flash control systems do not work properly when shifting and/or tilting the lens, or when an aperture other than the maximum aperture is used.

[5] Electronic range finder can not be used with shifting or tilting.

[6] Manual exposure mode only.

[7] See teleconverter manual for list of compatible lenses.

[8] With maximum effective aperture of f/5.6 or faster.

[9] When focusing at minimum focus distance with AF 80–200 mm f/2.8S, AF 35–70 mm f/2.8S, new AF 28–85 mm f/3.5–4.5S, or AF

28–85 mm f/3.5–4.5S lens at maximum zoom, in-focus indicator may be displayed when image on matte screen in viewfinder is not in focus. Adjust focus manually until image in viewfinder is in focus.
10 With maximum aperture of f/5.6 or faster.
11 Some lenses can not be used (see below).
12 Range of rotation for Ai 80–200 mm f/2.8S ED tripod mount limited by camera body. Filters can not be exchanged while Ai 200–400 mm f/4S ED is mounted on camera.
13 If maximum aperture is specified using **Non-CPU lens data** option in shooting menu, aperture value will be displayed in viewfinder and top control panel.
14 Can be used only if lens focal length and maximum aperture are specified using **Non-CPU lens data** option in shooting menu. Use spot or center-weighted metering if desired results are not achieved.
15 For improved precision, specify lens focal length and maximum aperture using **Non-CPU lens data** option in shooting menu.
16 Can be used at in manual exposure modes at shutter speeds slower than 1/125 s. If maximum aperture is specified using **Non-CPU lens data** option in shooting menu, aperture value will be displayed in viewfinder and top control panel.
17 Exposure determined by presetting lens aperture. In aperture-priority auto exposure mode, preset aperture using lens aperture ring before performing AE lock or shifting lens. In manual exposure mode, preset aperture using lens aperture ring and determine exposure before shifting lens.
18 Exposure compensation required when used with AI 28–85 mm f/3.5–4.5S, AI 35–105 mm f/3.5–4.5S, AI 35–135 mm f/3.5–4.5S, or AF-S 80–200 mm f/2.8D. See teleconverter manual for details.
19 Requires PK-12 or PK-13 auto extension ring. PB-6D may be required depending on camera orientation.
20 Use preset aperture. In manual exposure mode, set aperture using focusing attachment before determining exposure and taking photograph.

- PF-4 Reprocopy Outfit requires PA-4 Camera Holder.

Incompatible Accessories and Non-CPU Lenses

The following accessories and non-CPU lenses can NOT be used with the D2Xs:

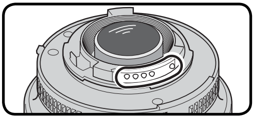
- Non-AI lenses
- Lenses that require the AU-1 focusing unit (400 mm f/4.5, 600 mm f/5.6, 800 mm f/8, 1200 mm f/11)
- Fisheye (6 mm f/5.6, 8 mm f/8, OP 10 mm f/5.6)
- 21 mm f/4 (old type)
- K2 rings
- ED 180–600 mm f/8 (serial numbers 174041–174180)
- ED 360–1200 mm f/11 (serial numbers 174031–174127)
- 200–600 mm f/9.5 (serial numbers 280001–300490)
- Lenses for the F3AF (80 mm f/2.8, 200 mm f/3.5, TC-16 Teleconverter)
- PC 28 mm f/4 (serial number 180900 or earlier)
- PC 35 mm f/2.8 (serial numbers 851001–906200)
- PC 35 mm f/3.5 (old type)
- 1000 mm f/6.3 Reflex (old type)
- 1000 mm f/11 Reflex (serial numbers 142361–143000)
- 2000 mm f/11 Reflex (serial numbers 200111–200310)

Compatible Non-CPU Lenses

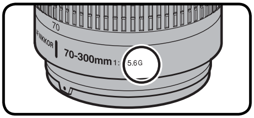
If lens data are specified using the **Non-CPU lens data** option in the shooting menu, many of the features available with CPU lenses can also be used with non-CPU lenses. If lens data are not specified, color matrix metering can not be used, and center-weighted metering is used when matrix metering is selected.

Non-CPU lenses can only be used in exposure modes A and M, when aperture must be set using the lens aperture ring. If the maximum aperture has not been specified using **Non-CPU lens data**, the camera aperture display will show the number of stops from maximum aperture; the actual aperture value must be read off the lens aperture ring. Aperture-priority auto will be selected automatically in exposure modes P and S. The exposure-mode indicator in the top control panel will blink, and **A** will be displayed in the viewfinder.

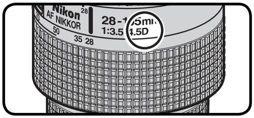
CPU lenses can be identified by the presence of CPU contacts. Type G lenses are marked with a "G" on the lens barrel, type D lenses with a "D."



CPU lens


70
AF NIKKOR
70-300mm 1:
5.6G

Type G lens


Nikon
AF NIKKOR
28-105mm
1:3.5-4.5D
50
35 28

Type D lens

Type G lenses are not equipped with a lens aperture ring. Unlike other CPU lenses, there is no need to lock the aperture ring at the minimum aperture setting (maximum f/-number) when using a type G lens.

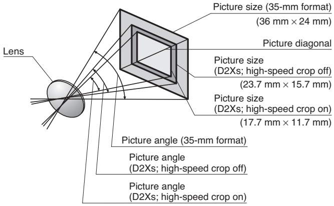
Picture Angle and Focal Length

The diagonal picture angle of the D2Xs is less than that of a 35-mm camera. When calculating the focal length of the lenses for the D2Xs in 35-mm format, multiply the focal length of the lens by about 1.5 (high-speed crop mode off) or 2 (high-speed crop mode on):

Picture angle		Approximate focal length (mm) in 35-mm format (modified for picture angle)							
35-mm film camera		17	20	24	28	35	50	60	85
D2Xs	Hi-speed crop: Off	25.5	30	36	42	52.5	75	90	127.5
	Hi-speed crop: On	34	40	48	56	70	100	120	170
35-mm film camera		105	135	180	200	300	400	500	600
D2Xs	Hi-speed crop: Off	157.5	202.5	270	300	450	600	750	900
	Hi-speed crop: On	210	170	360	400	600	800	1000	1200

Calculating Picture Angle

The size of the area exposed by a 35-mm camera is 36 × 24 mm. The size of the area exposed by the D2Xs, in contrast, is 23.7 × 15.7 mm (high-speed crop off) or 17.7 × 11.7 mm (high-speed crop on). As a result, the picture angle of photographs taken with the D2Xs differs from the picture angle for 35-mm cameras, even when the focal length of the lens and the distance to the subject are the same.


Picture size (35-mm format)
(36 mm × 24 mm)
Picture diagonal
Lens
Picture size
(D2Xs; high-speed crop off)
(23.7 mm × 15.7 mm)
Picture size
(D2Xs; high-speed crop on)
(17.7 mm × 11.7 mm)
Picture angle (35-mm format)
Picture angle
(D2Xs; high-speed crop off)
Picture angle
(D2Xs; high-speed crop on)

Other Accessories for the D2Xs

At the time of writing, the following accessories were available for the D2Xs.

Batteries/ Chargers/ AC adapters	♦ **EN-EL4a Rechargeable Li-ion Battery**: Additional EN-EL4a batteries are available from local retailers and Nikon service representatives. ♦ **MH-21 Quick Charger**: The MH-21 can be used to recharge and calibrate EN-EL4a and EN-EL4 batteries. ♦ **EH-6 AC Adapter**: The EH-6 can be used with AC power sources of 50–60 Hz and 100–120 V or 200–240 V. Separate power cables are available for use in North America, the United Kingdom, continental Europe, Australia, and Japan.
Wireless LAN adapters and antennas	♦ **WT-2/2A and WT-1/1A Wireless Transmitters**: These wireless transmitters are mounted on the bottom of the camera and connect via a USB cable. Power is supplied from the camera. The WT-2/2A supports IEEE 802.11g for high-speed wireless transmission, and can be used in combination with Camera Control Pro (available separately) to control the camera remotely. Both models support IEEE 802.11b and can be used to upload photographs to an ftp server over a wireless network. See pages 223–231 for more information. ♦ **WA-E1 Extended Range Antenna**: Extends line-of-sight range of WT-2/2A and WT-1/1A to a maximum of about 150 m (outdoors, 1 Mbps)

✓ Use Only Nikon Brand Electronic Accessories

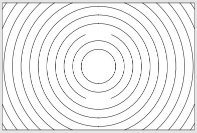
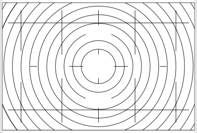
Your Nikon D2Xs digital camera is designed to the highest standards and includes complex electronic circuitry. Only Nikon brand electronic accessories (including battery chargers, batteries, and AC adapters) certified by Nikon specifically for use with your Nikon digital camera are engineered and proven to operate within the operational and safety requirements of this electronic circuitry.

THE USE OF NON-NIKON ELECTRONIC ACCESSORIES COULD DAMAGE YOUR CAMERA AND MAY VOID YOUR NIKON WARRANTY. The use of third-party rechargeable Li-ion batteries not approved by Nikon could interfere with normal operation of the camera or result in the batteries overheating, igniting, rupturing, or leaking.

For more information about Nikon brand accessories, contact your local authorized Nikon dealer.

Viewfinder eyepiece accessories

- ♦**Focusing Screens**: The focusing screens available for the D2Xs are listed below. Type B and E screens can also be used with the D2H.

Type B III		A type B BriteView III focusing screen is supplied with the camera.
Type E III		The type E clear-matte III focusing screen is etched with a grid, making it suitable for copying and architectural photography. Best results are achieved with PC-Nikkor lenses.

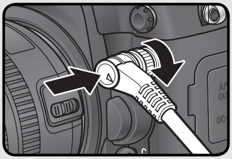
- ♦**DG-2 Magnifier**: The DG-2 magnifies the scene displayed in the viewfinder. Use for close-up photography, copying, telephoto lenses, and other tasks that call for added precision. DK-18 eyepiece adapter (available separately) required.
- ♦**DK-14 and DK-17A Antifog Finder Eyepieces**: These viewfinder eyepieces prevent fogging in humid or cold conditions. The DK-17A is equipped with a safety lock.
- ♦**DK-19 Rubber Eyepiece Cup**: The DK-19 makes the image in the viewfinder easier to see, preventing eye fatigue.
- ♦**Diopter-Adjustment Viewfinder Lenses**: To accommodate individual differences in vision, viewfinder lenses are available with diopters of –3, –2, 0, +1, and +2m^{-1}. The DK-17C is equipped with a safety lock.
- ♦**DK-17M Magnifying Eyepiece**: The DK-17M magnifies the view through the viewfinder by 1.2 × for greater precision when framing.
- ♦**DR-5 Right-Angle Magnifying Viewing Attachment/DR-4 Right-Angle Viewing Attachment**: The DR-4 and DR-5 attach to the viewfinder eyepiece at a right angle, allowing the image in the viewfinder to be viewed from above when the camera is in the horizontal shooting position. The DR-5 can also magnify the view through the viewfinder by 2 × for greater precision when framing (note that the edges of the frame will not be visible when the view is magnified).
- ♦**DK-18 Eyepiece Adapter**: The DK-18 is used when attaching the DG-2 Magnifier or DR-3 Right-Angle Viewing Attachment to the D2Xs.

Filters	• Nikon filters can be divided into three types: screw-in, slip-in, and rear-interchange. Use Nikon filters; filters manufactured by other makers may interfere with autofocus or electronic range finding. • The D2Xs can not be used with linear polarizing filters. Use the C-PL circular polarizing filter instead. • The NC and L37C filters are recommended for protecting the lens. • When using an R60 filter, set exposure compensation to +1. • To prevent moiré, use of a filter is not recommended when the subject is framed against a bright light, or when a bright light source is in the frame. • Color matrix and 3D color matrix metering may not produce the desired results when used with filters with an exposure factor (filter factor) over 1 × (Y44, Y48, Y52, O56, R60, X0, X1, C-PL, ND2S, ND4S, ND4, ND8S, ND8, ND400, A2, A12, B2, B8, B12). We recommend center-weighted metering. For details, see the manual provided with the filter.
Optional Speedlights	♦ **SB-800**: This high performance Speedlight has a Guide Number of 38/125 (m/ft, 35-mm zoom head position, ISO 100) and supports i-TTL, TTL, auto aperture (AA), non-TTL auto (A), manual, and repeating flash control. Flash sync mode, including slow and rear-curtain sync, can be set from the camera. When used with the D2Xs, the SB-800 supports Auto FP High-Speed Sync for sync speeds faster than 1/250 s (repeating flash mode excluded), Flash Color Information Communication for optimal white balance, FV Lock for recomposing photos without changing flash level, and Advanced Wireless Lighting with support for i-TTL, auto aperture, manual, and repeating flash control. The built-in AF-assist illuminator can be used with all of the D2Xs's eleven focus areas. For bounce-flash or close-up photography, the flash head can be rotated through 90° above and 7° below the horizontal, 180° left, and 90° right, while soft lighting can be achieved with the supplied SW-10H bounce adapter. Auto power zoom (24–105 mm) ensures that the illuminating is adjusted in accord with lens focal length. The built-in wide panel can be used for illuminating angles of 14 mm and 17 mm. An illuminator is included to assist in adjusting settings in the dark. The SB-800 accepts four AA batteries (five AA batteries when powered by the supplied SD-800 battery pack) or SD-6, SD-7, or SD-8A power sources (available separately; see the Speedlight manual for details). Custom settings are available for fine-tuning all aspects of flash operation.

Optional Speedlights (continued)	♦ **SB-600**: This high performance Speedlight has a Guide Number of 30/98 (m/ft, 35-mm zoom head position, ISO 100) and supports i-TTL, TTL, and manual flash control. Flash sync mode, including slow and rear-curtain sync, can be set from the camera. When used with the D2Xs, the SB-600 supports Auto FP High-Speed Sync for sync speeds faster than 1/250 s, Flash Color Information Communication for optimal white balance, and FV Lock for recomposing photos without changing flash level. With an SB-800 Speedlight or SU-800 wireless Speedlight commander acting as a master flash, Advanced Wireless Lighting allows the SB-600 to serve as a remote slave flash in i-TTL and manual flash control modes. The built-in AF-assist illuminator can be used with all of the D2Xs's eleven focus areas. For bounce-flash or close-up photography, the flash head can be rotated through 90° above the horizontal, 180° left, and 90° right. Auto power zoom (24–85 mm) ensures that the illuminating is adjusted in accord with lens focal length. The built-in wide panel can be used for an illuminating angle of 14 mm. An illuminator is included to assist in adjusting settings in the dark. The SB-600 accepts four AA batteries (see the Speedlight manual for details). Custom settings are available for fine-tuning all aspects of flash operation. ♦ **SB-R200**: This high-performance wireless remote Speedlight has a Guide Number of 10/32 (m/ft, ISO 100, 20°C/68°F). Although it cannot be mounted on the camera accessory shoe, the SB-R200 can be fired remotely using an optional SB-800 Speedlight or SU-800 wireless Speedlight commander. It can held by hand, placed on an AS-20 Speedlight stand, or mounted on the camera lens using the SX-1 attachment for remote control and close-up i-TTL photography. When using the D2Xs with the above Speedlights, refer to the listing for CLS- (Creative Lighting System) compatible or digital SLR cameras in the Speedlight manual.
PC card adapters	♦ **EC-AD1 PC Card Adapter**: The EC-AD1 PC card adapter allows Type I CompactFlash memory cards to be inserted in PCMCIA card slots.
Software	♦ **Capture NX**: A complete photo editing package. ♦ **Camera Control Pro**: Control the camera remotely from a computer and save photographs directly to the computer hard disk. ♦ **Image Authentication**: Determine whether photographs taken with image authentication on have been modified after shooting.

Remote terminal accessories

The D2Xs is equipped with a ten-pin remote terminal for remote control and automatic photography. The terminal is provided with a cap, which protects the contacts when the terminal is not in use. The following accessories can be used:



Accessory	Description	Length*
MC-21 Extension Cord	Can be connected to MC-series 20, 22, 23, 25, or 30.	3 m (9´10´´)
MC-22 Remote Cord	Remote shutter release with blue, yellow, and black terminals for connection to a remote shutter-triggering device, allowing control via sound or electronic signals.	1 m (3´3´´)
MC-23 Connecting Cord	Connects two cameras for simultaneous operation.	40 cm (1´4´´)
MC-25 Adapter Cord	Ten-pin to two-pin adapter cord for connection to devices with two-pin terminals, including the MW-2 radio control set, MT-2 intervalometer, and ML-2 modulite control set.	20 cm (8´´)
MC-30 Remote Cord	Remote shutter release; can be used to reduce camera shake or keep the shutter open during a time exposure.	80 cm (2´7´´)
MC-35 GPS Adapter Cord	Connects GPS devices to D2Xs via PC cable supplied by manufacturer of GPS device (👁 135).	—
MC-36 Remote Cord	Remote shutter release; can be used for interval timer photography or to reduce camera shake or keep the shutter open during a time exposure. Equipped with back-lit control panel, shutter-release lock for use in bulb photography, and timer that beeps at one-second intervals.	85 cm (2´9´´)
ML-3 Modulite Remote Control Set	Allows infrared remote control at ranges of up to 8 m (26´).	—

* All figures are approximate.

Approved Memory Cards

The following cards have been tested and approved for use in the D2Xs:

SanDisk	SDCFB	128 MB, 256 MB, 512 MB, 1 GB, 2GB, 4 GB
	SDCFB (Type II)	300 MB
	SDCF2B (Type II)	256 MB
	SDCFH (Ultra II)	256 MB, 512 MB, 1 GB, 2GB, 4 GB, 8GB
	SDCFX (Extreme III)	1 GB, 2 GB, 4 GB
Lexar Media	Entry-level CompactFlash cards	128 MB, 256 MB, 512 MB
	High speed 40× with Write Acceleration (WA)	256 MB, 512 MB, 1 GB
	Professional 40× with WA	8 GB
	Professional 80× with WA	512 MB, 1 GB, 2GB, 4 GB
	Professional 80× with WA and LockTight technology	512 MB, 2 GB
Microdrive		1 GB, 2GB, 4 GB, 6 GB

Operation is not guaranteed with other makes of card. For more details on the above cards, please contact the manufacturer.

Memory Cards

- Memory cards may be hot after use. Observe due caution when removing memory cards from the camera.
- Format memory cards before first use or after data have been written to or deleted from the card by a device other than the camera.
- Turn the power off before inserting or removing memory cards. Do not remove memory cards from the camera, turn the camera off, or remove or disconnect the power source during formatting or while data are being recorded, deleted, or copied to a computer. Failure to observe these precautions could result in loss of data or in damage to the camera or card.
- Do not touch the card terminals with your fingers or metal objects.
- Do not apply force to the card casing. Failure to observe this precaution could damage the card.
- Do not bend, drop, or subject to strong physical shocks.
- Do not expose to water, high levels of humidity, or direct sunlight.

Caring for the Camera

Storage and Maintenance

Storage

When the camera will not be used for an extended period, replace the monitor cover, remove the battery, and store the battery in a cool, dry area with the terminal cover in place. To prevent mold or mildew, store the camera in a dry, well-ventilated area. Do not store your camera with naphtha or camphor moth balls or in locations that:

- are poorly ventilated or damp
- are next to equipment that produces strong electromagnetic fields, such as televisions or radios
- are exposed to temperatures above 50 °C/122 °F (for example, near a space heater or in a closed vehicle on a hot day) or below –10 °C (14 °F)
- are subject to humidities of over 60%

See "Caring for the Camera and Battery" (☞ iv–v) for more information.

Cleaning

Camera body	Use a blower to remove dust, dirt, or sand then wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. After using the camera at the beach or seaside, wipe off any sand or salt with a dry cloth lightly dampened with fresh water, then dry thoroughly. The camera may be damaged if foreign matter gets inside the camera body. Nikon cannot accept liability for damage caused by dirt or sand.
Lens, mirror, and viewfinder	These elements are made of glass and are easily damaged. Remove dust and lint with a blower. If using an aerosol blower, keep the can vertical to prevent the discharge of liquid. To remove fingerprints and other stains, apply a small amount of lens cleaner to a soft cloth and clean with care.
Monitor	Remove dust and lint with a blower. When removing fingerprints and other stains, wipe the surface lightly with a soft cloth or chamois leather. Do not apply pressure, as this could result in damage or malfunction.
Ambient light sensor	Use a blower to remove dust and lint, then wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. Do not use alcohol or lens cleaning solutions.

✓ The Monitor

Should the monitor break, care should be taken to avoid injury caused by broken glass and to prevent liquid crystal from entering your eyes and mouth.

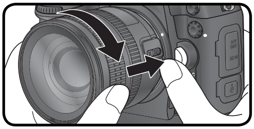
✎ The Control Panel

Rarely, static electricity may cause the control panel to brighten or darken. This does not indicate a malfunction; the display will shortly return to normal.

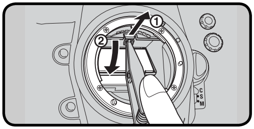
Replacing the Focusing Screen

A type B BriteView Ⅲ focusing screen is inserted in the camera at shipment. To insert an optional type E clear-matte Ⅲ focusing screen (👀 248):

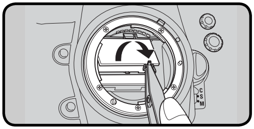
1 Turn the camera off and remove the lens.



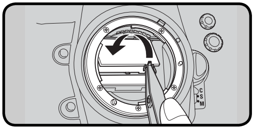
2 Using the tweezers supplied with the focusing screen, pull the focusing screen latch towards you. The screen holder will spring open.



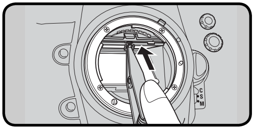
3 Remove the existing screen, using the supplied tweezers and being careful to handle the screen by the tab to avoid scratches.



4 Using the tweezers and handling the screen by the tab, set the replacement screen in the holder.



5 Push the front edge of holder upward until it clicks into place.



✓ Replacing Focusing Screens

Do not touch the surface of the mirror or focusing screens.

✓ Focusing Screens

Use only screens designated for use in the D2Xs.

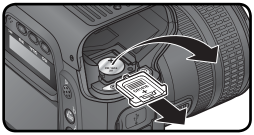
Framing Grids

The display in type E focusing screens may be slightly out of position depending on how the focusing screen is placed.

Replacing the Clock Battery

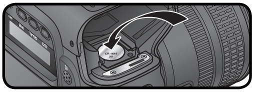
The camera clock is powered by a CR1616 lithium battery with a life of about four years. If the CLOCK icon is displayed in the top control panel while the exposure meters are on, the battery is running low and needs to be replaced. When the battery is exhausted, the CLOCK icon will blink while the exposure meters are on. Photographs can still be taken but will not be stamped with the correct time and date, and interval timer photography will not function correctly. Replace the battery as described below.

1 The clock battery chamber is located on the roof of the main battery chamber. Turn the camera off and remove the EN-EL4a battery.

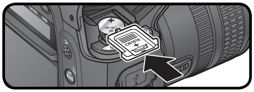


2 Slide the clock battery chamber cover toward the front of the main battery chamber.

3 Remove the clock battery.



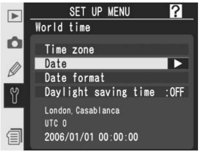
4 Insert new CR1616 lithium battery so that the positive side (the side marked with "+" and the battery name) is visible.



5 Slide the clock battery chamber cover towards the back of the main battery chamber until it clicks into place.

6 Reinsert the EN-EL4a.

7 Set the camera to the current date and time. Until the date and time have been set, the icon will flash in the top control panel.



Daylight saving time :OFF

London, Casablanca

UTC 0

2006/01/01 00:00:00

⚠ CAUTION

Use only CR1616 lithium batteries. Using another type of battery could cause an explosion. Dispose of used batteries as directed.

✓ Inserting the Clock Battery

Insert the clock battery in the correct orientation. Inserting the battery incorrectly could not only prevent the clock from functioning but could damage the camera.

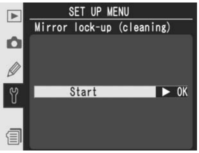
The Low-Pass Filter

The image sensor that acts as the camera's picture element is fitted with a low-pass filter to prevent moiré. Although this filter prevents foreign objects from adhering directly to the image sensor, under certain conditions dirt or dust on the filter may appear in photographs. If you suspect that dirt or dust inside the camera is affecting your photographs, you can check for the presence of foreign objects on the low-pass filter as described below.

1 Turn the camera off and connect an EH-6 AC adapter (available separately). If you do not have access to an EH-6 AC adapter, use a fully-charge EN-EL4a or EN-EL4 battery.

2 Remove the lens and turn the camera on.

3 Press the MENU button and select **Mirror lock-up** from the setup menu (213; note that this option is only available if an EH-6 adapter is used or the battery is fully charged). The message shown at right will be displayed.

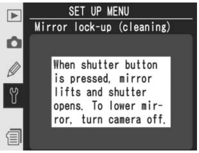


SET UP MENU

Mirror lock-up (cleaning)

Start ▶ OK

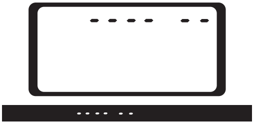
4 Press the multi selector to the right. The message shown at right will be displayed in the camera monitor, and a row of dashes will be displayed in the control panel and viewfinder. To return to normal operation without raising the mirror, turn the camera off. Mirror lock-up will also be cancelled if the monitor is allowed to turn off automatically.



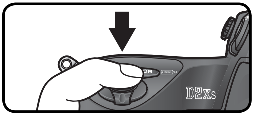
SET UP MENU

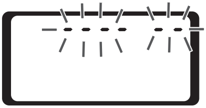
Mirror lock-up (cleaning)

When shutter button is pressed, mirror lifts and shutter opens. To lower mirror, turn camera off.

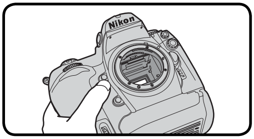


5 Press the shutter-release button all the way down. The mirror will be raised and the shutter curtain will open, revealing the low-pass filter, and the row of dashes in the control panel will blink. The displays in the viewfinder and rear control panel will turn off.





6 Holding the camera so that light falls on the low-pass filter, examine the filter for dust or lint. If there are foreign objects on the filter, the filter requires cleaning. See the following section.



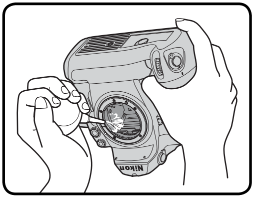
7 Turn the camera off. The mirror will return to the down position and the shutter curtain will close. Replace the lens or body cap and disconnect the AC adapter.

Cleaning the Low-Pass Filter

The low-pass filter is extremely delicate and easily damaged. Nikon recommends that filter be cleaned only by Nikon-authorized service personnel. Should you choose to clean the filter yourself, follow the steps below.

1 Raise the mirror as described in steps 1–5 on the preceding page. Do not remove or disconnect the power source until cleaning is complete.

2 Remove dust and lint from the filter with a blower. Do not use a blower-brush, as the bristles could damage the filter. Dirt that can not be removed with a blower can only be removed by Nikon-authorized service personnel. Under no circumstances should you touch or wipe the filter.



3 Turn the camera off. The mirror will return to the down position and the shutter curtain will close. Replace the lens or body cap and disconnect the AC adapter.

Use a Reliable Power Source

The camera shutter curtain is delicate and easily damaged. If the camera powers off while the mirror is raised, the shutter curtain will close automatically. Observe the following precautions to prevent damage to the curtain:

- Use a fully-charged battery or an EH-6 AC adapter (available separately) for prolonged inspection or cleaning of the low-pass filter.
- Do not turn the camera off or remove or disconnect the power source while the mirror is raised.
- If the battery runs low while the mirror is raised, a beep will sound and the self-timer lamp will blink to warn that the shutter curtain will close and the mirror will lower in about two minutes. End cleaning or inspection immediately.

Troubleshooting

Understanding Error Messages and Displays

This section lists the indicators and error messages that appear in the viewfinder, control panel, and monitor when there is a problem with the camera. Consult the list below before contacting your retailer or Nikon representative.

Indicator		Problem	Solution	🕮
Control panel	View-finder			
FE E (blinks)		Lens aperture ring is not set to minimum aperture.	Set ring to minimum aperture (largest f/-number).	20
🪫	🪫	Low battery.	Ready a fully-charged spare battery.	27
🪫 (blinks)	🪫 (blinks)	Battery exhausted.	Replace battery.	27
▭ (blinks)	🪫 (blinks)	Battery can not be used.	Contact Nikon-authorized service representative.	27
ΔF		No lens attached, or non-CPU lens attached without specifying maximum aperture. Aperture shown in stops from maximum aperture.	Aperture value will be displayed if maximum aperture is specified.	133
	▶◀ (blinks)	Camera unable to focus using autofocus.	Focus manually.	85
HI		Subject too bright; photo will be overexposed.	• Use a lower ISO sensitivity • Use optional ND filter • In exposure mode: S Increase shutter speed A Choose a smaller aperture (larger f/-number)	52 249 90 92
Lo		Subject too dark; photo will be underexposed.	• Use a higher ISO sensitivity • Use optional Speedlight • In exposure mode: S Lower shutter speed A Choose a larger aperture (smaller f/-number)	52 108 90 92

Indicator				
Control panel	Viewfinder	Problem	Solution	
bulb (blinks)		bulb selected in shutter-priority auto.	Change shutter speed or select manual exposure mode.	90, 94
⚡ (blinks)	⚡	Speedlight that does not support D-TTL flash control attached and set to TTL.	Change flash mode setting on optional Speedlight.	111
◉ (blinks)		Speedlight that does not support red-eye reduction attached and flash sync mode set to red-eye reduction.	Change flash sync mode or use Speedlight that supports red-eye reduction.	111–112
	⚡ (blinks)	If indicator blinks for 3s after flash fires, photo may be underexposed.	Check photo in monitor; if underexposed, adjust settings and try again.	116
Err (blinks)		Camera malfunction.	Release shutter. If error persists or appears frequently, consult with Nikon-authorized service representative.	2
0 (blinks)	Cd (blinks)	Memory insufficient to record further photos at current settings, or camera has run out of file or folder numbers.	• Reduce quality or size. • Delete photographs. • Insert new memory card.	45 156 22

Indicator				
Monitor	Control panel	Problem	Solution	
NO CARD PRESENT	[-E-]	Camera cannot detect memory card.	Turn camera off and confirm that card is correctly inserted.	22
CARD IS NOT FORMATTED	For	Memory card has not been formatted for use in D2Xs.	Format memory card.	23, 214
FOLDER CONTAINS NO IMAGES		No images on memory card or folder(s) selected for playback contain no images.	Select folder containing images from **Playback folder** menu or insert different memory card.	22, 158

Indicator		Problem	Solution	👁
Monitor	Control panel			
THIS CARD CANNOT BE USED	(CHA) (blinks)	• Error accessing memory card. • Unable to create new folder. • Card has not been formatted for use in D2Xs.	• Use Nikon-approved card. • Check that contacts are clean. If card is damaged, contact retailer or Nikon representative. • Delete files or insert new memory card. • Format memory card.	252 2 22, 156 23, 214
ALL IMAGES HIDDEN		All photos in current folder are hidden.	No images can be played back until another folder has been selected or **Hide image** used to allow at least one image to be displayed.	158, 161
FILE DOES NOT CONTAIN IMAGE DATA		File has been created or modified using a computer or different make of camera, or file is corrupt.	Delete file or reformat memory card.	23, 156, 214
NO IMAGES AVAILABLE FOR TRIMMING		Memory card does not contain images that can be cropped.	Insert memory card containing RAW or JPEG images taken with D2Xs.	123

A Note on Electronically-Controlled Cameras

In extremely rare instances, unusual characters may appear in the control panel and the camera may stop functioning. In most cases, this phenomenon is caused by a strong external static charge. Turn the camera off, remove and replace the battery, and turn the camera on again, or, if you are using an AC adapter (available separately), disconnect and reconnect the adapter and turn the camera on again. In the event of continued malfunction, contact your retailer or Nikon representative. Note that disconnecting the power source as described above may result in loss of any data not recorded to the memory card at the time the problem occurred. Data already recorded to the card will not be affected.

Specifications

Type	Single-lens reflex digital camera with interchangeable lenses
Effective pixels	12.4 million
Image sensor	23.7 × 15.7 mm; total pixels: 12.84 million
Image size (pixels)	4288 × 2848 (**L**), 3216 × 2136 (**M**), 2144 × 1424 (**S**)
High-speed crop on	3216 × 2136 (**L**), 2400 × 1600 (**M**), 1600 × 1064 (**S**)
Lens mount	Nikon F mount (with AF coupling and AF contacts)
Compatible lenses[*]	
Type G or D AF Nikkor	All functions supported
Micro Nikkor 85 mm F2.8D	All functions supported except autofocus and some exposure modes
Other AF Nikkor[†]	All functions supported except 3D color matrix metering II and 3D multi-sensor balanced fill-flash for digital SLR
AI-P Nikkor	All functions supported except 3D color matrix metering II, 3D multi-sensor balanced fill-flash for digital SLR, and autofocus
Non-CPU	Can be used in exposure modes A and M; electronic range finder can be used if maximum aperture is f/5.6 or faster; color matrix metering, multi-sensor balanced fill-flash for digital SLR, and aperture value display supported if user provides lens data

[*] IX Nikkor lenses can not be used

[†] Excluding lenses for F3AF

Picture angle	Equivalent in 35-mm format is approximately 1.5 times lens focal length (2 times when high-speed crop is on)
Viewfinder	Optical fixed eye-level pentaprism
Diopter adjustment	–3 – +1 m^{-1}
Eyepoint	19.9 mm (–1.0 m^{-1})
Focusing screen	Ships with type B BriteView III screen installed
Frame coverage	Approximately 100% of lens (vertical and horizontal)
High-speed crop on	Approximately 97% of lens (vertical and horizontal)
Magnification	Approximately 0.86× (50-mm lens at infinity; –1.0 m^{-1})
Reflex mirror	Quick return
Lens aperture	Instant return with depth-of-field preview
Focus-area selection	Single area or group can be selected from 11 focus areas (9 focus areas when high-speed crop is on)
Lens servo	Instant single-servo AF (S); continuous-servo AF (C); manual (M); predictive focus tracking automatically activated according to subject status in single- and continuous-servo AF

Autofocus	TTL phase detection by Nikon Multi-CAM2000 autofocus module
Detection range (ISO 100 at 20 °C/68 °F)	–1–+19 EV (0–+19 EV for two focus areas outside high-speed crop)
AF-area mode	Single-area AF, dynamic-area AF, group dynamic-AF, dynamic-area AF with closest subject priority
Focus lock	Focus can be locked by pressing shutter-release button half-way (single-servo AF) or by pressing **AE-L/AF-L** button

Exposure	
Metering	TTL exposure metering using 1,005-pixel RGB sensor
Matrix	3D color matrix metering II supported with type G and D lenses; color matrix metering II available with other CPU lenses and with non-CPU lenses if user provides lens data
Center-weighted	Weight of 75% given to 6, 8, 10, or 13-mm circle in center of frame, or weighting based on average of entire frame
Spot	Meters 3-mm circle (about 2% of frame) centered on selected focus area (on center focus area when non-CPU lens is used)
Range (ISO 100 equivalent, f/1.4 lens, 20 °C/68 °F)	0–20 EV (3D color matrix or center-weighted metering) 2–20 EV (spot metering)
Exposure meter coupling	Combined CPU and AI
Exposure control	
Exposure modes	Programmed auto with flexible program; shutter-priority auto; aperture priority auto; manual
Exposure compensation	–5–+5 EV in increments of ⅓, ½, or 1 EV
Bracketing	Exposure and/or flash bracketing (2–9 exposures in increments of ⅓, ½, ⅔, or 1 EV)
Exposure lock	Luminosity locked at detected value with **AE-L/AF-L** button

Shutter	Electronically-controlled vertical-travel focal-plane shutter
Speed	30–1⁄8000 s in steps of ⅓, ½, or 1 EV, bulb

ISO Sensitivity (Recommended Exposure Index)	100–800 in steps of ⅓, ½, or 1 EV with additional settings of approximately 0.3, 0.5, 0.7, 1, or 2 EV over ISO 800.

White balance	Auto (TTL white-balance with main image sensor, 1,005 pixels RGB sensor, and ambient light sensor), six manual modes with fine-tuning, color temperature setting
Bracketing	2–9 exposures in increments of 1, 2, or 3

Flash	
Sync contact	X-contact only; flash synchronization at up to 1/250 s
Flash control	
TTL	TTL flash control by combined five-segment TTL multi sensor with single-component IC and 1,005-pixel AE sensor • **SB-800 or 600:** i-TTL balanced fill-flash for digital SLR and standard i-TTL flash for digital SLR • **SB-80DX, 28DX, or 50DX:** 3D multi-sensor balanced-fill flash for digital SLR, multi-sensor balanced-fill flash for digital SLR, or standard TTL flash for digital SLR
Auto aperture	Available with SB-800, 80DX, or 28DX and CPU lens
Non-TTL auto	Available with such Speedlights as SB-800, 28, 27, and 22s
Range-priority manual	Available with SB-800
Sync modes	Front curtain sync (normal), slow sync, rear-curtain sync, red-eye reduction, red-eye reduction with slow sync
Flash-ready indicator	Lights when SB-series Speedlight such as 800, 600, 80DX, 28DX, or 50DX is fully charged; blinks for 3 s after flash is fired at full output
Accessory shoe	Standard ISO hot-shoe contact with safety lock
Nikon Creative Lighting System (CLS)	With CLS-compatible flash units such as SB-800, SB-600, SU-800, and SB-R200, supports Advanced Wireless Lighting, Auto FP High-Speed Sync, Flash Color Information Communication, modeling illumination, and FV lock.

Storage	
Media	Type I and II CompactFlash memory cards; Microdrives
File system	Compliant with Design Rule for Camera File System (DCF) and Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)
Compression	• **Compressed 12-bit NEF (RAW)**: approximately 50–60% • **JPEG**: JPEG baseline-compliant, can be selected from **Size priority** and **Optimal quality**

Self-timer	Electronically controlled timer with 2–20 s duration

Depth-of-field preview	Lens aperture stopped down when depth-of-field preview button is pressed

Monitor	2.5-in., 232,000-dot, low-temperature polysilicon TFT LCD with brightness adjustment

Video output	Can be selected from NTSC and PAL
External interface	USB 2.0
Tripod socket	¼″ (ISO)
Firmware	User upgradeable
Supported languages	Chinese (Simplified), Dutch, English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Spanish, Swedish
Power source	• One 11.1 V EN-EL4a rechargeable Li-ion battery • EH-6 AC adapter (available separately)
Dimensions (W × H × D)	Approximately 157.5 × 149.5 × 85.5 mm (6.2 × 5.9 × 3.4 in.)
Weight	Approximately 1070 g (2 lb 6 oz) without battery, memory card, body cap, or monitor cover
Operating environment	
Temperature	0 – 40 °C (32 – 104 °F)
Humidity	Less than 85% (no condensation)

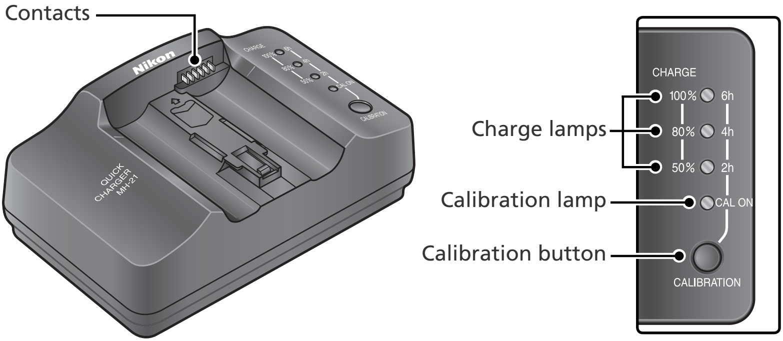
- Unless otherwise stated, all figures are for a camera with a fully-charged battery operating at an ambient temperature of 20 °C (68 °F).
- Nikon reserves the right to change the specifications of the hardware and software described in this manual at any time and without prior notice. Nikon will not be held liable for damages that may result from any mistakes that this manual may contain.

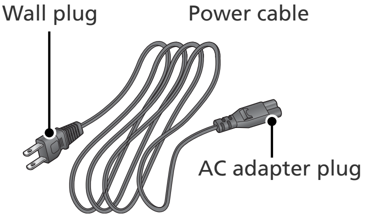
✔ Servicing the Camera and Accessories

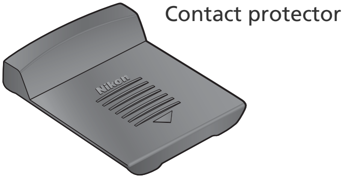
The D2Xs is a precision device and requires regular servicing. Nikon recommends that the camera be inspected by the original retailer or Nikon service representative once every one to two years, and that it be serviced once every three to five years (note that fees apply to these services). Frequent inspection and servicing are particularly recommended if the camera is used professionally. Any accessories regularly used with the camera, such as lenses or optional Speedlights, should be included when the camera is inspected or serviced.

Quick Charger / Rechargeable Battery

The supplied MH-21 Quick Charger is for use with Nikon EN-EL4 and EN-EL4a rechargeable Li-ion batteries. The MH-21 is equipped with battery calibration feature and charge lamps that glow, blink, or turn off according to the battery charge state.


Contacts
Nikon
QUICK CHARGER MH-21
CHARGE
100%
6h
80%
4h
50%
2h
CAL ON
CALIBRATION
Charge lamps
Calibration lamp
Calibration button


Wall plug
Power cable
AC adapter plug


Contact protector
Nikon

Calibration

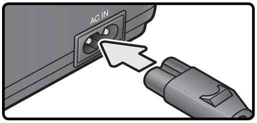
Calibration allows precise measurement of battery charge, ensuring that the battery level can be displayed more accurately.

EN-EL4a Rechargeable Li-ion Batteries

EN-EL4a rechargeable Li-ion batteries can transmit information on battery state when connected to compatible devices.

Using the Charger

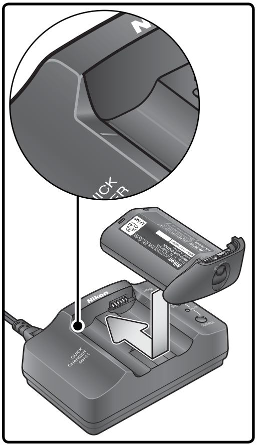
1 Plug the AC adapter plug into the battery charger.



2 Plug the wall plug into a power outlet. The charge and calibration lights will remain off.

3 Insert the battery (terminals first), aligning the end of the battery with the guide and then sliding the battery in the direction indicated until it clicks into place. Charging will begin when the battery is inserted. The charge state is shown by the charge lamps:

Charge state	**Charge lamps (green)**		
	50%	**80%**	**100%**
Less than 50% of maximum capacity	☼ Blinks	● Off	● Off
50–80% of maximum capacity	○ Glows	☼ Blinks	● Off
More than 80% but less than 100% of maximum capacity	○ Glows	○ Glows	☼ Blinks
100% of maximum capacity	○ Glows	○ Glows	○ Glows



4 When charging is complete, slide the battery out of the charger and unplug the charger.

When the charger is not in use, replace the contact protector to prevent dust from accumulating on the charger contacts.

If the Calibration Lamp Blinks

If the calibration lamp blinks for about ten seconds after a battery is inserted, the battery needs to be calibrated to ensure that its charge state can be accurately measured. The time needed to calibrate the battery is shown by the charge lamps:

Approximate time needed to recalibrate battery	**Calibration lamp (yellow)**	**Charge lamps (green)**		
	CAL ON	**2 h**	**4 h**	**6 h**
Over 6 hours	○ Glows	○ Glows	○ Glows	○ Glows
4–6 hours	○ Glows	○ Glows	○ Glows	● Off
2–4 hours	○ Glows	○ Glows	● Off	● Off
Under 2 hours	○ Glows	● Off	● Off	● Off

To start calibration, press the **CAL** button next to the calibration lamp for about a second while the lamp is blinking. When calibration is complete, the calibration and charge lamps will turn off and charging will begin.

Although calibration is recommended for accurate measurement of battery charge state, calibration need not be performed when the calibration lamp blinks. Once begun, calibration can be interrupted as desired.

- If the **CAL** button is not pressed while the calibration lamp is blinking, normal charging will begin after about ten seconds.
- To interrupt calibration, press the calibration button again. Calibration will end and charging will begin.

✓ Troubleshooting

- **If the lamps blink when no battery is inserted**: the MH-21 has malfunctioned. Unplug the charger immediately and contact a Nikon service representative.
- **If the calibration and charge lamps all flash at once when a battery is inserted**: a problem occurred during charging. Remove the battery and unplug the charger immediately, then contact a Nikon service representative.

✓ Precautions for Use: Quick Charger

- *The Nikon MH-21 is for use with Nikon EN-EL4/EN-EL4a rechargeable Li-ion batteries only. Do not attempt to recharge other batteries with the MH-21.*
- Do not use this product with non-compatible batteries.
- Remove the power cable from the power outlet when not in use.
- Should you notice smoke or an unusual smell coming from the charger, unplug it, taking care to avoid burns. Take the charger to a Nikon representative for inspection.

✓ Precautions for Use: Rechargeable Li-ion Batteries

- *After removing the battery from the camera for storage or transportation, be sure to attach the terminal cover included with the EN-EL4a. Shorting the battery could result in leakage, fire explosion, or other damage to the battery.*
- Do not connect the product to any device not specifically referred to in this manual.
- Before using the product for the first time or after an extended period of disuse, recharge the battery with the MH-21 Quick Charger.
- If the battery will not be used for some time, run the battery flat before putting it away.
- When storing the battery for long periods, charge it and then run it flat again at least once a year.
- Always remove the battery from the camera or battery charger when not in use. If the battery is left in place, minute amounts of current will continue to flow even when the battery is not use, and the battery may be drained to the point that it will no longer function.
- When the battery is not in use, attach the terminal cover and store the battery in a dry location with an ambient temperature of 15–25 °C (59–77 °F). Do not leave the battery in hot or extremely cold places.
- During recharging, the ambient temperature should be between 0–40 °C (32–104 °F) or the battery may not fully charge or may not function properly.
- Do not attempt to recharge a fully-charged battery. Failure to observe this precaution will result in reduced battery performance.
- You may notice that the battery is hot directly after use or recharging; this does not indicate a malfunction.
- Even when fully charged, the battery will discharge more rapidly in cold conditions. It is recommended that you keep a fully-charged, spare battery on hand.
- Check the camera battery level indicator regularly. If the battery requires calibration, calibrate the battery using the MH-21 Quick Charger.
- A marked drop in the time a fully-charged battery retains its charge at room temperature indicates a drop in battery performance. Check battery performance indicator using the **Battery Info** option in the camera setup menu. When the camera shows that battery performance is at its lowest level, the battery has reached the end of its working life and needs to be replaced. Purchase a new EN-EL4a battery.
- The charge state shown in the camera battery level indicator is affected by ambient temperature and other external conditions.

Specifications

MH-21 Quick Charger	
Rated input	AC 100–240 V (50/60 Hz)
Charging output	DC 12.6 V/1200 mA
Supported batteries	Nikon EN-EL4/EN-EL4a rechargeable Li-ion batteries
Charging time*	• EN-EL4a: 145 minutes • EN-EL4: 100 minutes
Operating temperature	0–40°C (+32–104°F)
Dimensions (W × H × D)	Approximately 135 mm × 54.5mm × 85 mm (5.3 × 2.1 × 3.3 in.)
Length of cord	Approximately 1800 mm (70.8 in.)
Weight	Approximately 225 g (7.9 oz), excluding power cable

* Approximate charging time when battery is fully discharged.

EN-EL4a rechargeable Li-ion battery	
Type	Rechargeable lithium-ion battery
Rated capacity	11.1V/2500 mAh
Dimensions (W × H × D)	Approximately 56.5 mm × 27 mm × 82.5 mm (2.2 × 1.1 × 3.2 in.)
Weight	Approximately 180 g (6.3 oz), excluding terminal cover

Nikon will not be held liable for any errors this manual may contain. The appearance of this product and its specifications are subject to change without notice.

Battery Life

The number of shots that can be taken with an EN-EL4a battery varies with the condition of the battery, temperature, and how the camera is used.

Case 1

At room temperature (20 °C/68 °F), approximately 3800 shots can be taken with a fully-charged (2500 mAh) EN-EL4a battery and an AF-S VR 70–200 mm f/2.8G IF ED lens (VR off) under the following standard Nikon test conditions: continuous high-speed shooting mode; high-speed crop mode off; continuous-servo autofocus; image quality set to JPEG Normal; image size set to Large; shutter speed 1/250 s; shutter-release pressed halfway for three seconds and focus cycled from infinity to minimum range three times; after six shots, monitor turned on for five seconds and then turned off; cycle repeated once exposure meters have turned off.

Case 2

At room temperature (20 °C/68 °F), approximately 1150 shots can be taken with a fully-charged (2500 mAh) EN-EL4a battery and an AF-S VR 24–120 mm f/3.5–5.6G IF ED lens (VR off) under the following standard Nikon test conditions: single-frame shooting mode; high-speed crop mode off; single-servo autofocus; image quality set to JPEG Normal; image size set to Large; shutter speed 1/250 s; shutter-release pressed halfway for six seconds and focus cycled from infinity to minimum range once with each shot; after each shot, monitor turned on for two seconds and then turned off; cycle repeated once exposure meters have turned off.

The following can reduce battery life:
- Using the monitor
- Keeping the shutter-release button pressed halfway
- Repeated autofocus operations
- Taking NEF (RAW) or TIFF (RGB) photographs
- Slow shutter speeds
- Using optional WT-2/2A or WT-1/1A wireless transmitters

To ensure that you get the most from rechargeable Nikon EN-EL4a batteries:
- Keep the battery contacts clean. Soiled contacts can reduce battery performance.
- Use batteries immediately after charging. Batteries will lose their charge if left unused.

Index

Menus

- **PLAYBACK MENU** (156–167)
  - **Delete**, 156–157
  - **Playback folder**, 158
  - **Slide show**, 159–160
  - **Hide image**, 161–162
  - **Print set**, 163–165
  - **Display mode**, 166
  - **Image review**, 166
  - **After delete**, 167
  - **Rotate tall**, 167
- **SHOOTING MENU** (168–178)
  - **Shooting menu bank**, 169–170
  - **Reset shooting menu**, 171
  - **Active folder**, 172
  - **File naming**, 173
  - **Image quality**, 45–46
  - **Image size**, 48–49
  - **Hi-speed Crop**, 41–42
  - **JPEG compression**, 47
  - **RAW compression**, 48
  - **White balance**, 55–67
  - **Long exp. NR**, 175
  - **High ISO NR**, 176
  - **ISO sensitivity**, 52–53
  - **Image sharpening**, 68
  - **Tone compensation**, 69
  - **Color space**, 70
  - **Color mode**, 72
  - **Hue adjustment**, 73
  - **Image overlay**, 118–119
  - **Multiple exposure**, 120–122
  - **Trim**, 123–124
  - **Intvl timer shooting**, 125–129
  - **Non-CPU lens data**, 131–134
- **CSM MENU** (179–212)
  - **C**: **Bank select**, 182
  - **R**: **Menu reset**, 183–184
  - **a1**: **AF-C mode priority**, 185
  - **a2**: **AF-S mode priority**, 185
  - **a3**: **Group dynamic AF**, 186–187
  - **a4**: **Lock-on**, 188
  - **a5**: **AF activation**, 188
  - **a6**: **Focus area illum**, 189
  - **a7**: **Focus area**, 190
  - **a8**: **Vertical AF-ON**, 190
  - **b1**: **ISO auto**, 191
  - **b2**: **ISO step value**, 192
  - **b3**: **EV step**, 192
  - **b4**: **Exposure comp. EV**, 193
  - **b5**: **Exposure comp.**, 193
  - **b6**: **Center weight**, 194
  - **b7**: **Fine-tune exposure**, 194
  - **c1**: **AE lock**, 195
  - **c2**: **AE-L/AF-L**, 195
  - **c3**: **Auto meter-off**, 196
  - **c4**: **Self-timer**, 196
  - **c5**: **Monitor off**, 196
  - **d1**: **Shooting speed**, 197
  - **d2**: **Maximum shots**, 197
  - **d3**: **Exp. delay mode**, 198
  - **d4**: **File No. Seq.**, 199
  - **d5**: **Cntrl panel/finder**, 199–200
  - **d6**: **Illumination**, 200
  - **e1**: **Flash sync speed**, 201
  - **e2**: **Flash shutter speed**, 201
  - **e3**: **AA flash mode**, 202
  - **e4**: **Modeling flash**, 202
  - **e5**: **Auto BKT set**, 203
  - **e6**: **Manual mode bkting**, 204
  - **e7**: **Auto BKT Order**, 204
  - **e8**: **Auto BKT selection**, 205
  - **f1**: **Center button**, 205–206
  - **f2**: **Multi selector**, 207
  - **f3**: **Photo info/playback**, 207
  - **f4**: **FUNC. button**, 208
  - **f5**: **FUNC. + command**, 209
  - **f6**: **Command dials**, 210–211
  - **f7**: **Buttons and dials**, 212
  - **f8**: **No CF card?**, 212
- **SET UP** (213–232)
  - **Format**, 214
  - **LCD brightness**, 215
  - **Mirror lock-up**, 215
  - **Video mode**, 216
  - **World time**, 18
  - **Language**, 17
  - **Image comment**, 217
  - **Auto image rotation**, 218
  - **Recent settings**, 219
  - **Voice memo**, 150
  - **Voice memo overwrite**, 151
  - **Voice memo button**, 151
  - **Audio output**, 153
  - **USB**, 220
  - **Dust off ref photo**, 221–222
  - **Battery info**, 223
  - **Wireless LAN**, 223–231
  - **Image authentication**, 231
  - **Save/load settings**, 232
  - **Firmware version**, 232

Symbols

- 3D color matrix metering II. *See* Metering
- 3D Multi Sensor Balanced Fill-Flash for Digital SLR, 110

A

- Advanced Wireless Lighting, 109
- AF-area mode, 78
- Aperture, 87–96
  - adjusting, 92
  - lock, 96
  - maximum, 86, 93, 95, 108, 110, 131
  - minimum, 20, 87
  - non-CPU lenses and, 131
  - value display, 7, 11
- Ambient light sensor, 55, 60
- Auto meter off, 196
- Autoexposure lock, 97

Autofocus, 78
  continuous-servo, 74
  focus tracking, 74
  single-area AF, 79
  single-servo, 74
Auto FP high-speed sync, 109, 249
A/V OUT, 153, 234

B

Backlight, control panel, 3
BASIC. *See* Image quality
Battery,
  inserting, 16
  life, 270
  storage, v
Black-and-white, 72
Blur, reducing, 33, 52–53, 90. *See also* Exposure delay mode; Mirror-up mode 43, 198
Bulb. *See* Long time exposures
Bracketing, 100–107. *See also* Exposure bracketing; White balance, bracketing
Brightness. *See* Monitor, brightness of

C

C. *See* Autofocus, continuous-servo
Camera Control Pro, 250
Capture NX, 250
CH. *See* Shooting mode
CL. *See* Shooting mode
Clock-calendar, 19
Closest subject priority. *See* AF-area mode
Color profile. *See* 📷 **SHOOTING MENU**, **Color space**
Color temperature. *See* White balance
CompactFlash. *See* Memory card
Computer, 220, 235
Continuous shooting mode, 43, 197
Contrast. *See* 📷 **SHOOTING MENU**, **Tone compensation**
CPU lenses, 20, 244–246
Creative Lighting System, 108
Custom Settings, 179
  defaults, 183
  menu banks, 182
CSM. *See* ✎ **CSM MENU**; Custom Settings

D

Daylight saving time, 18
DCF version 2.0. *See* Design rule for Camera File system
Deleting, 35, 146, 156–157. *See also* Memory card, formatting
  all images, 157
  playback menu, 156
  selected images, 157
  single-frame playback, 35, 138
Depth-of-field preview, 87
Design rule for Camera File system, 158
Digital Print Order Format, 163
Diopter, 31, 248
DPOF. *See* Digital Print Order Format
D-TTL flash control, 110

E

Electronic analog exposure display, 95
Electronic range finder, 85
Exif version 2.21, 165
Exposure bracketing, 100
Exposure compensation, 99
Exposure delay mode, 198
Exposure meters, 86. *See also* Auto meter off
Exposure mode, 87–95
  aperture-priority auto, 92–93
  manual, 94–95
  programmed auto, 88–89
  shutter-priority auto, 90–91

F

FINE. *See* Image quality
Flash, 108–116. *See also* Speedlight
  bracketing, 100
Flash Color Information Communication, 55
Flash-ready indicator, 116
Flash sync mode, 112
Flexible program, 89. *See also* Exposure mode, programmed auto
Focal plane mark, 3, 85
Focus. *See* autofocus; focus mode; manual focus
Focus area (focus brackets), 10, 76–81
Focus lock, 82
Focus mode, 74–75
Focusing screen, 248, 254
  type B BriteView III, 248
  type E clear matte III, 248
Folders, 158, 172, 199, 240
FV lock, 114, 208

G

GPS, 135
  data, 140
Group dynamic-AF. *See* AF-area mode

H

HI-1/HI-2, 52–53
Highlight display, 141, 166
High-speed crop, 41–42
  in viewfinder, 10–11
  mode, 41–42
Histogram, 140, 166
  RGB, 141, 166

I

Illuminator. *See* Backlight, control panel
Image authentication, 231
Image dust off, 221–222
Image files, 47, 50–51, 199
Image overlay, 118–119
Image sensor, 256, 261
Image size, 48–49
Image quality, 45–48

ISO sensitivity, 52–53. *See also* 📷 **SHOOTING MENU**, **ISO sensitivity**
ISO auto, 191
i-TTL flash control, 108

J

JPEG, 45–47

L

L. *See* Image size
Lens, 20–21, 244–246
  attaching, 20
  compatible, 244–245
  CPU, 20, 244–246
  non-CPU, 244–245
  type D, 20, 244, 246
  type G, 20, 244, 246
Long time-exposures, 94
Low-pass filter, 256–257

M

M. *See* Exposure mode, manual; Manual focus; Image size
Manual focus, 85
Memory buffer, 43–44, 50
Memory card, 22–24
  approved, 252
  capacity of, 50–51
  formatting, 23, 214
Metering, 86
  3D color matrix, 86
  center-weighted, 86
  color matrix, 86
  spot, 86
Microdrive. *See* memory card
Mirror up. *See* Shooting mode
Monitor, 5, 253
  auto off, 196
  brightness of, 215
  cover, 28
Monitor pre-flashes, 108, 110, 114
Multiple exposures, 120–122
Multi Sensor Balanced Fill-Flash for Digital SLR, 110
M-UP. *See* Shooting mode

N

NEF, 41–44
Noise, 45, 235–236, 250
  reduction, 176
    high sensitivities, 53
    slow shutter speeds, 94
NORMAL. *See* Image quality

P

PictBridge. *See* Printing photographs
PictureProject, 45, 235–236
Picture Transfer Protocol. *See* PTP.
Photo information, 139–141
Playback, 35, 138
Playback menu, 156–167
PRE. *See* White balance, preset
Predictive focus tracking, 74
Printing photographs, 238–242. *See also* Digital Print Order Format
Protecting images, 145
PTP, 220, 235, 238

R

RAW, 45–50, 118, 221. *See also* Image quality; NEF
Recent Settings, 39
Red-eye reduction, 111–113

S

S. *See* Autofocus, single-servo; Exposure mode, shutter-priority auto; Image size; Shooting mode
Self-portraits. *See* Self-timer
Self-timer, 130, 196
Sensitivity. *See* Sensitivity
Sequential file numbering, 199
Setup menu, 213–232
Shutter speed, 87–96
  and flash synchronization, 117, 201
Shooting menu, 168–178
  banks, 169–170
Shooting mode, 43–44
Single-frame. *See* Shooting mode
Single-frame playback, 35, 138–141
Size. *See* Image size
Speedlight, 108–116, 201–202, 249–250. *See also* flash compatible, 109–111, 117
sRGB. *See* 📷 **SHOOTING MENU**, **Color space**
Standard TTL Flash for Digital SLR, 110

T

Television, 234
TIFF-RGB. *See* Image quality
Time. *See* 🔧 **SET UP**, **World Time**
Time exposures. *See* Long time-exposures
Time zone. *See* 🔧 **SET UP**, **World Time**
Thumbnail playback, 142–143
Trim, 123–124
Two-button reset, 136

U

USB, 220, 235, 238. *See also* computer

V

Video device, 216, 234
Viewfinder, 10, 31
  focus. *See* Diopter

W

White balance, 55–67
  bracketing, 105–107
  color temperature, 59
  fine-tuning, 57–58
  preset, 60–67
Wireless networks, 224–231

No reproduction in any form of this manual, in whole or in part (except for brief quotation in critical articles or reviews), may be made without written authorization from NIKON CORPORATION.

NIKON CORPORATION
Fuji Bldg., 2-3 Marunouchi 3-chome,
Chiyoda-ku,Tokyo 100-8331, Japan

SB6E01(11)
6MBA6111--